

6th
PRIM.

HSTONE

2026



First Term



Table of Contents

Introduction

Let's Remember

Check and Go!	9
Part 1: Previous Years Revision on Grammar	
The Present Simple Tense	11
The Present Continuous Tense	13
The Past Simple Tense	15
Part 2: Skills	
1. Reading Skills	
A) Wh- words	17
B) How to Answer Reading Comprehension Questions	19
2. Writing Skills	
A) Parts of Speech	20
B) Sentence Formation	22
C) Punctuation Marks	23
D) Tips for Writing a Paragraph	25

Unit 2

Our Nature

Lesson 1	64
Lesson 2	70
Lesson 3	78
Lessons 4 & 5	83
Unit Review	90
Check Your Vocabulary	91
Writing Time	92
Student's Book Corner	93
Test Yourself (1)	94
Test Yourself (2)	96
Al-Azhar Corner	98
Al-Adwaa Revision on October	99

Module 1

Unit 1

Amazing places in Egypt

Lesson 1	28
Lesson 2	33
Lesson 3	41
Lessons 4 & 5	47
Unit Review	54
Check Your Vocabulary	55
Writing Time	56
Student's Book Corner	57
Test Yourself (1)	58
Test Yourself (2)	60
Al-Azhar Corner	62

Module 2

Unit 3

Community Builders

Lesson 1	107
Lesson 2	114
Lesson 3	123
Lessons 4 & 5	129
Unit Review	135
Check Your Vocabulary	136
Writing Time	137
Student's Book Corner	138
Test Yourself (1)	139
Test Yourself (2)	141
Al-Azhar Corner	143



Module 3

Unit 4 Resources Around Us

Lesson 1	145
Lesson 2	151
Lesson 3	159
Lessons 4 & 5	165
Unit Review	172
Check Your Vocabulary	173
Writing Time	174
Student's Book Corner	175
Test yourself (1)	176
Test yourself (2)	178
Al-Azhar Corner	180
Al-Adwaa Revision on November	181

Unit 5 Made in Egypt

Lesson 1	189
Lesson 2	194
Lesson 3	203
Lessons 4 & 5	209
Unit Review	215
Check Your Vocabulary	216
Writing Time	217
Student's Book Corner	218
Test yourself (1)	219
Test yourself (2)	221
Al-Azhar Corner	223

Unit 6 The Water Savers

Vocabulary	226
Story Elements	227
Story	228
Practice on Story	235

Final Revision and Tests

Revision on Units 1 & 2	238
Revision on Units 3 & 4	245
Revision on Units 5 & 6	252
Story Corner	257
Conjugation of Verbs	259
Final Tests	261
Al-Azhar Final Tests	291
Tapescripts	301
Writing Answers	304
Dictation Copybook	308



Let's Remember

هذا الجزء تأسيسي يهدف إلى تنمية مهارات القراءة والكتابة لدى الطالب. 📖



- Check and Go!

Part 1

- Previous Years Revision on Grammar

Part 2

- Reading Skills

- Writing Skills



CHECK and GO!

30

هذا الجزء مخصص لقياس مستوى الطالب قبل البدء في العام الدراسي الجديد وتحديد أهم النقاط التي يحتاج إلى تقويتها.



Listening

1 Listen and write (T) for true and (F) for false:

2

(نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب)

- 1 Drink little water throughout the day.
- 2 Exercise helps you feel good.

()

()



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

6

- 1 I can climb the high
a) river b) way c) mountain d) lake
- 2 are a kind of animals.
a) Tablets b) Kangaroos c) Shorts d) Vets
- 3 I like to photos with my phone.
a) read b) take c) play d) buy
- 4 I fresh food.
a) like b) likes c) liking d) to like
- 5 What are you?
a) do b) does c) doing d) did
- 6 The children football yesterday.
a) play b) plays c) played d) playing

3 Read and circle the odd one out and replace it with the correct one:

4

- 1 onions carrots fish tomatoes
- 2 bag book ruler ice cream
- 3 cook happy delicious sad
- 4 write drank watch kick

9

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Games are a wonderful way to have fun and learn. We can play games inside or outside. Some games use a board, like Snakes and Ladders. Games help us learn to share, take turns, and follow rules. They also teach us how to win and lose smartly.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The game "Snakes and Ladders" is a game.
a) card b) board c) box d) video
- The underlined word "smartly" means
a) cleverly b) slowly c) quickly d) fast

B Answer the following question:

- Where can we play games?



Writing

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- My parents (be eat) now.
- Sara is a (help) girl. She always helps me.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

- sky - blue - The - is.
- ate - The - the pizza - quickly - children.
- are - What - you - doing?
- girls - The - happy - are.

7 Translate from English to Arabic & from Arabic to English:

- I play volleyball on Fridays.
- وصل القطار في الساعة السادسة مساءً.

8 Write a paragraph about (My daily routine):

.....

.....

.....

PART 1

Previous Years Revision on Grammar

1. The Present Simple Tense زمن المضارع البسيط

نستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط للحديث عن الحقائق والعادات والروتين والأشياء التي نقوم بها بشكل متكرر.

Form	I/ You/ We/ They/ الاسم الجمع	He/ She/ It/ الاسم المفرد
Affirmative form: صيغة الإثبات	Subj. + (inf.) ... الفعل في المصدر <i>e.g. They do their homework every day.</i>	Subj. + (inf.) ... الفعل في المصدر + s, es, ies ... <i>e.g. He listens to music at night.</i>
Negative form: صيغة النفي	Subj. + don't + (inf.) ... الفعل في المصدر <i>e.g. We don't watch TV at school.</i>	Subj. + doesn't + (inf.) ... الفعل في المصدر <i>e.g. She doesn't play the piano.</i>
Yes/ No question: السؤال بـ (هل)	Do + subj. + (inf.) ... ؟ الفعل في المصدر <i>e.g. Do you like the Italian pizza?</i>	Does + subj. + (inf.) ... ؟ الفعل في المصدر <i>e.g. Does Amira have a car?</i>
Wh- question: السؤال باستخدام كلمات الاستفهام	Wh-word + do + subj. + (inf.) ... ؟ الفعل في المصدر <i>e.g. What do you do on Friday?</i>	Wh-word + does + subj. + (inf.) ... ؟ الفعل في المصدر <i>e.g. What time does she get up?</i>

Keywords:

الكلمات الدالة:

0%

never
أبداً

10%

rarely
نادرًا

50%

sometimes
أحيانًا

70%

often
غالبًا

90%

usually
عادة

100%

always
دائمًا

• لاحظ أن الكلمات الدالة تأتي قبل الفعل مباشرة مثل (usually gets) وتأتي بعد الفعل (be) مثل (is always).

e.g. • Omar usually visits his grandparents on holidays.

• She is always helpful.

Verb to (be) in the present simple tense الفعل (يكون) في زمن المضارع البسيط

✓ Affirmative form

I + (am) ...

He / She / It + (is) ...

We / They / You + (are) ...

✓ Negative form

I + (am not) ...

He/ She/ It + (isn't) ...

We/ They/ You + (aren't) ...

✓ Yes / No question:

Is/ Are + subject (فاعل) ... ?

- 1 A: Is she a vet? B: Yes, she is.
- 2 A: Are you thirsty? B: No, I am not.

PRACTICE

on The Present Simple Tense

1 Read and choose the correct answer:

- 1 It (~~never~~ – sometimes – often – ~~ever~~) snows in summer.
- 2 Layan likes music. She (~~always~~ – hardly – ~~never~~ – ~~ever~~) listens to music.
- 3 Adham often (~~reads~~ – reading – read – ~~to read~~) magazines in the morning.
- 4 What do you usually (~~playing~~ – plays – ~~to play~~ – play) on the weekends?
- 5 My parents (~~live~~ – lives – are live – ~~to live~~) in an apartment.
- 6 She (~~usually~~ – always – ~~never~~ – ~~ever~~) plays in the street. She plays in the club.
- 7 Does the driver (~~wearing~~ – wear – wore – wears) a seat belt?
- 8 The children never (~~go~~ – goes – going – ~~to go~~) to the cinema.
- 9 Do you (~~like~~ – likes – liked – ~~to like~~) chocolate cake?
- 10 My mom always (~~like~~ – liking – likes – ~~to like~~) bright colors.
- 11 (~~Do~~ – Does – Did – Have) they play at night?
- 12 He (~~always gets~~ – gets always – always get – ~~get always~~) up early.
- 13 The journey usually (~~takes~~ – take – took – taking) an hour.

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 She (~~not~~) play tennis every day.
- 2 (~~Does~~) they usually play football?
- 3 Ahmed and Laila always (~~cleans~~) the kitchen for their mum.
- 4 The library (~~close~~) at 5:00 pm.
- 5 The restaurant is really cheap; it (~~don't~~) cost much.
- 6 (~~Be~~) Amgad happy now?
- 7 Noha never (~~dr~~) coffee at night.
- 8 Dina (~~goes always~~) to her school on her bike.
- 9 She is (~~always~~) tired after work. She's always active.
- 10 Amr (~~don't~~) go on holiday every year.
- 11 How (~~does~~) you usually go to work?
- 12 (~~Be~~) they at home today?
- 13 Do you (~~giving~~) your sister a present on her birthday?

2. The Present Continuous Tense زمن المضارع المستمر

نستخدم زمن المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن فعل يحدث الآن.

Affirmative form:

صيغة الإثبات:

I	am	→	I'm	(inf.) + ing ...
He/ She/ It	is	→	He's / She's / It's	
We / They / You	are	→	We're / They're / You're	

e.g. I am watching a movie now. e.g. She's studying English. e.g. My cats are drinking milk.

Negative form:

صيغة النفي:

I	am not	→	I'm not	(inf.) + ing ...
He/ She/ It	is not (isn't)	→	He isn't / She isn't / It isn't	
We / They / You	are not (aren't)	→	We aren't / They aren't / You aren't	

e.g. Samy isn't playing a game.

e.g. The students aren't doing a project.

Yes/No question:

السؤال بـ (هل):

Am	I	(inf.) + ing ... ?
Is	he / she / it	
Are	we / they / you	

e.g. A: Is Ola driving to work?

B: Yes, she is.

e.g. A: Are you studying math?

B: No, I am not.

Wh-question:

السؤال باستخدام كلمة الاستفهام:

Wh-word	am / is / are	subject	(inf.) + ing ... ?
---------	---------------	---------	--------------------

e.g. A: What is Nader doing?

B: He is playing football.

e.g. A: What are you waiting for?

B: We are waiting for the bus.

Keywords:

الكلمات الدالة:

now الآن / at the moment — at the present في هذه اللحظة / Look! انظر / Listen! اسمع /

still مازال / today اليوم / this + (time) هذا (توقيت)

PRACTICE

on The Present Continuous Tense

1 Read and choose the correct answer:

- 1 Samy (~~are~~ – ~~is~~ – ~~be~~ – ~~am~~) walking to school today.
- 2 I (~~go~~ – ~~went~~ – ~~goes~~ – ~~going~~) helping my dad at the moment.
- 3 Look! That boy is (~~throwing~~ – ~~throws~~ – ~~throw~~ – ~~threw~~) away the garbage.
- 4 Ahmed and Ali (~~don't~~ – ~~aren't~~ – ~~isn't~~ – ~~doesn't~~) studying their lessons now.
- 5 We (~~don't~~ – ~~are~~ – ~~is~~ – ~~doesn't~~) enjoying our holiday.
- 6 Is he (~~plays~~ – ~~play~~ – ~~played~~ – ~~playing~~) now?
- 7 (~~Do~~ – ~~Are~~ – ~~Does~~ – ~~Is~~) you waiting for a bus?
- 8 What are you (~~drinks~~ – ~~drink~~ – ~~drinking~~ – ~~drank~~)?
- 9 Are you (~~pick~~ – ~~picking~~ – ~~picks~~ – ~~picked~~) up the flowers?
- 10 I am (~~eat~~ – ~~eats~~ – ~~eating~~ – ~~ate~~) a sandwich now.
- 11 I am busy now. I (~~had~~ – ~~have~~ – ~~has~~ – ~~am having~~) my breakfast.
- 12 Dad (~~is~~ – ~~does~~ – ~~do~~ – ~~has~~) fixing the car at the moment.
- 13 Look! Sarah (~~sleeps~~ – ~~is sleeping~~ – ~~slept~~ – ~~sleep~~) on the sofa.

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 (Am) your mother working now?
- 2 What are you (learn) this year?
- 3 Are the girls (clean) the room?
- 4 Is (they) studying?
- 5 No, she (doesn't) listening to music now.
- 6 (Is) you doing your homework?
- 7 She (read) in her bedroom at the moment.
- 8 Look! The sun is (shine) brightly.
- 9 Listen! The kids (be) playing in the playground.
- 10 He (not) looking for his keys.
- 11 The kids (not) having a good time.
- 12 (Is) you waiting for the bus?
- 13 A: Are you reading the story now? B: Yes, (am I).

3. The Past Simple Tense زمن الماضي البسيط

✓ يستخدم زمن الماضي البسيط للتعبير عن الأحداث التي بدأت وانتهت في الماضي في وقت معين.

Affirmative form:

صيغة الإثبات:

1. Regular Verbs

أفعال منتظمة تنتهي بـ (d, ed, ied)

معظم الأفعال يضاف لها (ed):
cook / cooked (e.g. Mom **cooked** lunch yesterday).

الأفعال المنتهية بـ (e) يضاف لها (d) فقط:
like / liked (e.g. She **liked** the party.)

الأفعال المنتهية بـ (y) يسبقها حرف ساكن، يضاف لها (ied) ويحذف الـ (y):
carry / carried (e.g. I **carried** the heavy bags.)

الأفعال المنتهية بحرف ساكن مسبق بحرف متحرك، يضاف لها (ed) مع مضاعفة الحرف الساكن:
chat / chatted (e.g. We **chatted** on the phone.)

2. Irregular Verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة (تتغير عند استخدامها في الماضي)

Present	Past	Present	Past	Present	Past
have/ has	had	buy	bought	go	went
am/ is	was	are	were	speak	spoke

Negative form:

صيغة النفي:

... الفعل في المصدر (inf.) + didn't + Subject

e.g. He **didn't go** to school yesterday.

e.g. They **didn't bake** cakes last week.

Yes/No question:

السؤال بـ (هل):

...? الفعل في المصدر (inf.) + Did + subject

e.g. A: Did you **study** yesterday?

B: Yes, (I) **did**. / No, (I) **didn't**.

Wh-question:

السؤال بكلمة الاستفهام:

...? الفعل في المصدر (inf.) + did + Wh-word

e.g. A: What **did** you **do**?

B: We **rode** our bikes.

Keywords:

الكلمات الدالة:

yesterday / last (week, night) / (two days, three weeks) ago / in the past / in (2020, 1995)

PRACTICE

on The Past Simple Tense

1 Read and choose the correct answer:

- 1 My grandparents (bought – buy – buys – buying) a new house last month.
- 2 I didn't (go – went – goes – going) to school yesterday.
- 3 Yara (didn't – don't – doesn't – isn't) close the window last night.
- 4 Nelly (water – watered – watering – waters) the plants five days ago.
- 5 A: Did you go to the beach yesterday? B: No, I (didn't – did – do – was).
- 6 She (wore – wear – wearing – wears) a nice pink dress yesterday.
- 7 (Did – Do – Does – Was) she fix the broken windows yesterday?
- 8 Did Mona (studied – study – studies – studying) math last week?
- 9 They (starts – started – start – starting) their new game two hours ago.
- 10 Amira didn't (go – goes – went – going) to the park last week.
- 11 What time (do – does – did – are) you go to bed yesterday?
- 12 When did you (cleans – clean – cleaned – cleaning) your room?
- 13 He (didn't – isn't – hasn't – haven't) paint new pictures last night.

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 I (play) football yesterday.
- 2 Malak (eat) her lunch two hours ago.
- 3 Youssef didn't (does) his homework.
- 4 He (go) to the cinema last week.
- 5 I (studying) English two days ago.
- 6 Mom (bake) a big cake for us yesterday.
- 7 What (does) you do yesterday?
- 8 Did you (swam) in the pool?
- 9 A: Did you visit your grandparents? B: Yes, I (do).
- 10 A: Did you (ate) your breakfast? B: No, I didn't.
- 11 Where (do) you spend your last holiday?
- 12 She (have) ice cream an hour ago.
- 13 Amira (doesn't) go to school because she was ill.

1. Reading Skills

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى مساعدة الطالب على قراءة الجمل والنصوص باللغة الإنجليزية، وإجابة الأسئلة الخاصة بمهارة القراءة.



Wh- words

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من مراجعة كلمات الاستفهام والإجابة عن المطلوب بطريقة صحيحة.

What ...? (ما / ماذا (للسؤال عن ماهية الشيء))

A: **What** are these?

B: These are **pencils**.

Where ...? (أين (للسؤال عن المكان))

A: **Where** is Mai?

B: She is **at school**.

When ...? (متى (للسؤال عن الوقت))

A: **When** do you go to work?

B: I go to work **at eight** in the morning.

Who ...? (من (للسؤال عن العاقل))

A: **Who** is he?

B: He is **my brother Youssef**.

Whose ...? (لمن (للسؤال عن الملكية))

A: **Whose** doll is this?

B: This is **my** doll. / This doll is **mine**.

Which ...? (أي (للسؤال عن الاختيار))

A: **Which** cake do you want?

B: I want the **chocolate** cake.

How ...? (كيف (للسؤال عن الحال ووسيلة المواصلات))

A: **How** do you go to work?

B: I go to work **by bus**.

How many ...? (كم العدد (للسؤال عن العدد))

A: **How many** flowers are there?

B: There are **ten** flowers.

How old ...? (كم العمر (للسؤال عن العمر))

A: **How old** are you?

B: I'm **eleven** years old.

How long ...?

(كم المدة/كم الطول (للسؤال عن المدة الزمنية/الأطوال الأفقية))

1- A: **How long** do you study science?

B: I study science **for an hour** every day.

2- A: **How long** is this street?

B: It is **10 meters** long.

How much ...?

كم الثمن / الكمية (للسؤال عن الثمن / الكمية)

- 1- A: **How much** are the tomatoes?
B: They are **five pounds**.
- 2- A: **How much** milk do you drink?
B: I drink **one cup** of milk a day.

Why ...?

(لماذا) للسؤال عن السبب

- A: **Why** didn't you come to **the club**?
B: I didn't come **because I was ill**.

✓ Checkpoint 1. Choose the correct answer:

- ① A: (**Who** – **What**) is her name? B: Her name is Lama.
- ② A: (**Where** – **When**) is Mazen? B: He's at school.
- ③ A: (**Where** – **Who**) won the match? B: Ola won the match.
- ④ A: (**Whose** – **When**) do you go to school? B: At 7 am.
- ⑤ A: How many boys are there? B: (**At school** – **Fifteen**).
- ⑥ (**Who** – **How**) many mangoes are there in the box? B: Three mangoes.
- ⑦ A: (**What** – **Why**) didn't you come to the party? B: Because I was sick.
- ⑧ A: How (**long** – **old**) is the snake? B: It's 90 cm.

2. Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- ① A: (**Who**) bag is this? B: It's Mona's bag.
- ② A: (**How**) jacket do you want? B: The brown jacket.
- ③ A: (**When**) do you study? B: I study in my room.
- ④ A: (**What**) is the race? B: At 7 am.
- ⑤ A: How (**much**) dresses did you buy? B: Four dresses.
- ⑥ A: (**Who**) old is he? B: He is eleven.
- ⑦ A: (**When**) do you go to the park? B: I go by bus.
- ⑧ A: (**Who**) much is the scooter? B: It's one thousand pounds.



How to Answer Reading Comprehension Questions

كيفية الإجابة عن أسئلة قطعة الفهم

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من إجابة أسئلة قطعة الفهم.

للإجابة عن قطعة القراءة المكونة من (100 - 90) كلمة في الورقة الامتحانية، اتبع الإرشادات الآتية:

Sports are activities that make our bodies strong and healthy. There are many types of sports, like football, basketball, and swimming. When we play sports, we move our bodies and exercise to stay fit. Playing sports with friends is fun and helps us learn important skills like teamwork. Sports are a great way to have fun and stay active!

A) Choose the correct word from a, b, c, or d:

Identify the general idea of the text.

لتحديد الفكرة العامة من النص، عليك قراءة الفقرة كلها مرتين ثم قراءة الاختيارات جيدًا واختيار الإجابة التي تتمحور حولها القطعة.

The general idea of the text is about

a) playing video games

b) playing sports

c) reading books

d) listening to music

Demonstrate understanding of specific details in the text.

عليك أن تركز مع تفاصيل القطعة وربط الأحداث ببعضها وكذلك الترابط والعلاقات ما بين الأشخاص والأشياء في القطعة.

There are many types of sports, like football, basketball, and

a) reading

b) drawing

c) swimming

d) singing

Determine the meaning of words and phrases in the text.

لتحديد واستنتاج معاني الكلمات وما تشير إليه، عليك قراءة الجملة التي وردت فيها الكلمة لاستنتاج معنى الكلمة بناء على المعنى العام للجملة.

The underlined word "healthy" means

a) bad

b) harmful

c) good

d) weak

B) Answer the following questions:

Describe the relationship between two people, events, ideas, or pieces of information in a text.

عليك الانتباه إلى الروابط والعلاقة ما بين الأشياء والأشخاص ببعضها، وعليك كذلك التركيز على ترتيب المعلومات وعلاقتها ببعضها.

What are sports?

Sports are activities that make our bodies strong and healthy.

Make logical inferences from the text.

عليك التركيز على عناصر وأجزاء المعلومات لاستخراج من النص المعلومات المطلوبة.

What is the importance of sports? / Infer the importance أهمية of sports.

When we play sports, we move our bodies and exercise to stay fit.

Playing sports with friends is fun and helps us learn important skills like teamwork.

Summarize the key supporting details and ideas in the text.

لنتمكن من تلخيص الفقرة، عليك قراءة القطعة جيدًا، واستخرج النقاط المهمة والرئيسية وضعها في جمل مفيدة.

Summarize the passage in one sentence.

Sports are a great way to have fun and stay active.

2. Writing Skills

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من مراجعة أساسيات تكوين الجملة:



Parts of Speech أجزاء الكلام



Nouns

* هي اسم شخص، حيوان، مكان، أو شيء.

e.g. Ali, lion, market, bike, ...

* قد يأتي الاسم فاعلاً (بداية الجملة) أو مفعولاً به (بعد الفعل).

e.g. * Ali has a big house.

* Lions live in the jungle.

✓ Checkpoint Underline the nouns:

① Nada is short.

② My car is new.

③ I have a car.

Pronouns

* تحل محل الأسماء.

e.g. I, we, it, ...

e.g. * We are very happy.

* They have two children.

* It is a bag.

✓ Checkpoint Circle the pronouns:

① (Nour – She) is clever.

② (They – The students) are very active.

③ What is (Sarah – she) doing?

Verbs

* يعبر عن حدث.

e.g. eat, play, do, ...

* يأتي الفعل غالباً بعد الفاعل.

e.g. * We eat our lunch at 3 pm.

* She walks to work every day.

✓ Checkpoint Read the story and circle the verbs:

I visit my grandparents every week. I go to the club every Friday. I play tennis and meet my friends. We have lunch together and go to the cinema.

Adjectives

* تصف الأسماء.

e.g. new, big, thirsty, ...

* قد تأتي الصفة قبل الاسم أو بعد الفعل (be).

e.g. * This is a tall giraffe.

* The elephant is big.

✓ Checkpoint Circle the adjectives:

① long – dress – house – pen

② write – eat – scary – jump

③ car – school – park – thin

Prepositions

* للدلالة عن الوقت أو المكان.

e.g. on, next to, in front of, ...

* تأتي حروف الجر قبل الأسماء.

e.g. * The book is **under** the bed.

* I go swimming **on** Mondays.

✓ Checkpoint Read and reorder:

① the table – **The bag** – on – is.

② on – **The hat** – my head – is.

③ office – is – in – his – **Dad**.

Notes

Prepositions of Time:

لاحظ استخدامات حروف الجر الآتية:

at with times:
مع الأوقات

3 o'clock/ 3:30/ night

in with months, seasons,
and years:
مع الشهور، الفصول، والسنوات

summer/ May/ the morning/ 2018

on with days and dates:
مع الأيام والتواريخ

Friday/ 5th May/ July 10th

✓ Checkpoint Read and choose the correct answer:

- ① I get up (at – in – on) 8 o'clock.
- ② We visit Grandma (in – on – by) Friday.
- ③ I was born (at – on – in) January.
- ④ My birthday is (on – in – at) June 7th.
- ⑤ My father sometimes comes late (on – in – at) night.
- ⑥ I bought a new car (on – in – at) 2023.
- ⑦ The football match is (on – in – at) 7 pm.
- ⑧ Do you study (on – in – at) the evening?
- ⑨ He sleeps (on – in – at) midnight.
- ⑩ My friends visit me (on – in – at) Sunday.



Sentence Formation تكوين الجملة

في اللغة الإنجليزية، يتم ترتيب الكلمات حسب نوع الجملة:

Affirmative sentence:

الجملة المثبتة:

Subject الفاعل	verb فعل	complement تكملة الجملة
e.g. She	eats	an apple a day.
e.g. The children	play	football every Friday.

الجملة التي تحتوي على الأفعال المساعدة (Auxiliary verbs)

في الجملة التي تحتوي على الأفعال المساعدة مثل be / do / have / can، يتم وضع الفعل المساعد قبل الفعل.

Subject الفاعل	auxiliary verb فعل مساعد	verb فعل	complement تكملة الجملة
e.g. She	can/ should/ must	do	the housework.
e.g. They	are	playing	football.
e.g. Noha	doesn't	have	a car.

الجملة الأمرية (Imperative sentences)

في الجملة التي تنفي الأمر، يتم وضع الفعل في بداية الجملة دون وجود فاعل يظهر بشكل صريح.

Verb فعل	complement تكملة الجملة
Close	the door.
Go	to your bed.

Yes/No question:

السؤال بـ (هل):

في الأسئلة، يتم تغيير ترتيب الكلمات. يتم وضع الفعل المساعد قبل الفاعل في هذه الحالة.

Auxiliary verb فعل مساعد	subject الفاعل	verb فعل	complement تكملة السؤال
Does	she	have	a job?
Is	he	studying	his lessons?

Wh-question:

السؤال باستخدام كلمة الاستفهام:

يتم وضع كلمة الاستفهام أول الترتيب ثم الفعل المساعد يليه الفاعل.

Wh- word كلمة الاستفهام	auxiliary verb فعل مساعد	subject الفاعل	verb فعل	complement تكملة السؤال
Where	do	you	live,	Ahmed?
What	are	they	doing	in their room?

✓ Checkpoint Put the words in the correct order to write correct sentences:

- ① many – I – read – books.
- ② are – animals – Elephants – big.
- ③ go – We – Fridays – swimming – on.
- ④ you – bike – ride – Can – a?
- ⑤ morning – room – Clean – every – your.



Punctuation Marks علامات الترقيم

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من معرفة بعض علامات الترقيم التي تساعد في الكتابة بشكل سليم.



Capital letters
الحروف الكبيرة

في بداية الجملة (الخبرية/ الأمرية/ الاستفهامية)/ أيام الأسبوع / الشهور / الضمير (أ) في أي مكان بالجملة / اللغات / الجنسيات / أسماء الأشخاص / البلدان / الأماكن الشهيرة.

1. Hadeer lives in Luxor.
2. Jack speaks English and French.
3. Today is Tuesday.
4. I visited the Eiffel Tower in Paris.

✓ Checkpoint Punctuate the following:

- ① i play basketball every week.
- ② He went to japan last year.
- ③ My brother mahmoud is a doctor.



Period (Full stop)
النقطة

في نهاية الجملة.

This is my friend Asmaa.
Do your homework, please.



Question mark
علامة الاستفهام

في نهاية السؤال.

- * **Wh- question:**
When do you sleep?
- * **Yes/ No question:**
Do you have a computer?



Exclamation point
علامة التعجب

نضع علامة التعجب (!) في نهاية العبارات أو الجمل التي تعبر عن الترحيب أو التعجب أو الشعور القوي.

Hello! / Wow! / What a nice day!

✓ Checkpoint Punctuate the following using (. - ? - !):

- ① The flower is red
- ② When is the English class
- ③ I like spaghetti
- ④ You're great
- ⑤ Do children like ice cream
- ⑥ Wow



Comma
الفاصلة السفلى

نستخدم الفاصلة السفلى عندما نكتب قائمة بالأشياء أو العبارات.

I like football, tennis, and basketball.

Yes, of course.

نستخدم بعد Yes / No في الإجابات.

I like playing sports, but I don't like reading books.

نستخدم قبل but.

Can I have some tea, please?

نستخدم قبل please إذا جاءت في نهاية الجملة.

✓ Checkpoint Put the (,) in the right place:

- ① He eats chicken but he doesn't eat eggs.
- ② Hana's hobbies are reading, drawing, and swimming.
- ③ Yes she has a bike.



Apostrophe
الفاصلة العليا

توضع قبل «s» الملكية.

My sister's car is big.

I'm a boy.

توضع في الاختصارات.

Omar isn't at school.

✓ Checkpoint Put the (') in the right place:

- ① This is Hana s room.
- ② They re my friends.
- ③ What s your address?

Practice Punctuation Marks

Find and write TWO (2) missing punctuation marks:

- 1 i love cooking baking, and playing football.
- 2 huda goes to the club on thursday.
- 3 What s your favorite subject
 - 1 do they like apples
 - 2 the baby is sleeping
 - 3 i like to eat cheese
 - 4 don t speak in the library.



Tips for Writing a Paragraph نصائح لكتابة فقرة

هذا الجزء للتعرف على طريقة الكتابة الصحيحة للفقرة الإنشائية:

ضع عنواناً للفقرة.

أول كل جملة حرف **capital**.

My school

School is a place where we learn new things every day. **In** grade 6, we study interesting subjects like math, science, languages, and arts. **We** also have fun activities like art and breaks. School is a place where we **make** friends and **create** memories that last a lifetime.

تأكد من استخدام علامات الترقيم بطريقة صحيحة **comma**.

نهاية كل جملة **period**.

استخدم الزمن المناسب.

- استخدم جملاً بسيطة ومرتبّة.

- تأكد من عدم وجود أخطاء إملائية.

لاحظ الآتي:

Now, it's Your Turn. الآن حان دورك.

Write a paragraph of about FIFTY (50) words using the following guiding elements:

"My weekend"

great – friends



MODULE 1

Unit 1: Amazing places in Egypt

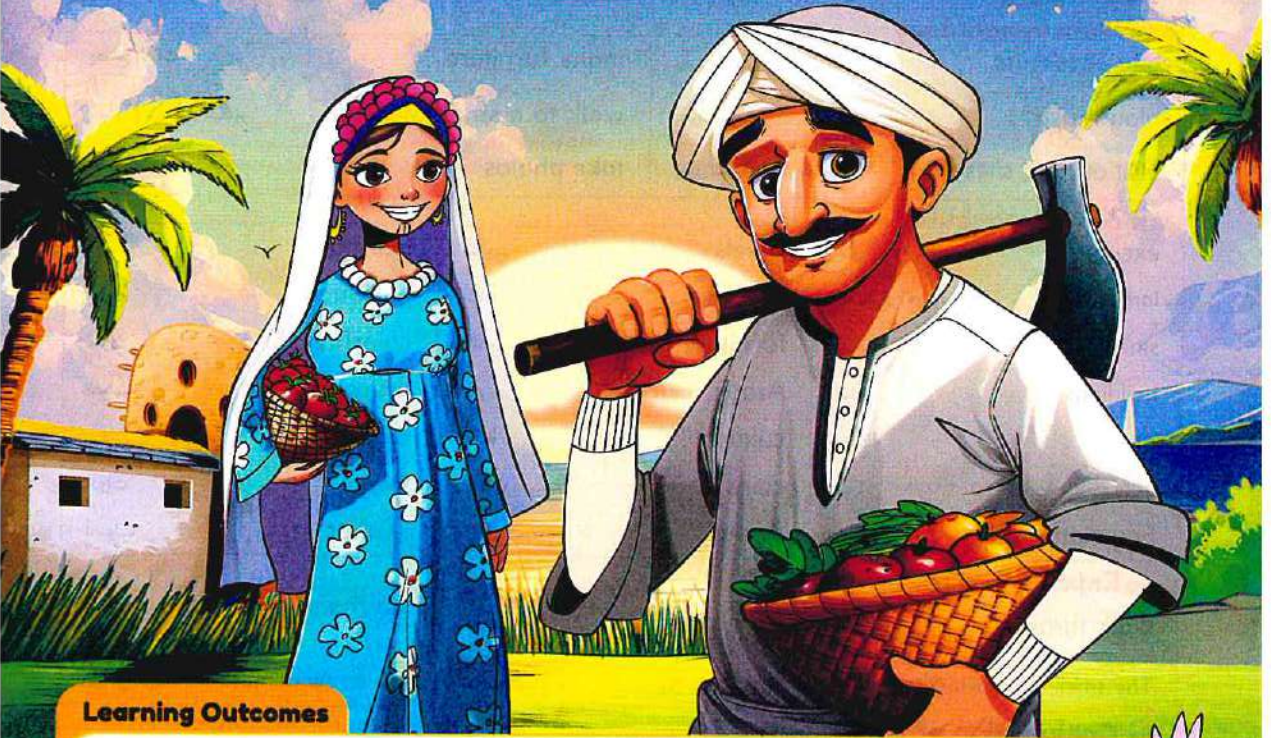
Unit 2: Our Nature

Unit

1

Amazing places in Egypt

أماكن مذهشة في مصر



Learning Outcomes

• By the end of this unit, the student will be able to:

• بنهاية هذه الوحدة، سيكون الطالب قادرًا على أن:

Listening:

- describe traditions and the life in Egypt.
- identify activities in different parts in Egypt.
- describe school routines and favorite activities.

• يصف التقاليد والحياة في مصر.
• يحدد الأنشطة في أجزاء مختلفة من مصر.
• يصف الروتين المدرسي والأنشطة المفضلة.

Speaking:

- talk about visiting a traditional place in Egypt.
- talk about a day at school and his/her favorite activities.
- identify and accurately pronounce the phoneme /ə/.

• يتحدث عن زيارة مكان تقليدي في مصر.
• يتحدث عن يوم في المدرسة وأنشطته المفضلة.
• يحدد وينطق بدقة الصوت /ə/.

Reading:

- find key information in cultural, personal, and factual texts. • يستخرج المعلومات الأساسية من النصوص الثقافية والشخصية والحقيقية.
- answer comprehension questions to show understanding of reading texts.

• يجيب عن أسئلة الفهم ليبين مدى فهمه لنصوص القراءة.

Writing:

- write sentences using the present simple correctly.
- write an informal email describing a typical day at school.
- create a poster about his/ her governorate.

• يكتب جملًا باستخدام زمن المضارع البسيط بشكل صحيح.
• يكتب بريدًا غير رسمي ليصف يومًا نموذجيًا في المدرسة.
• ينشئ ملصقًا عن محافظته.



Listen and say:

استمع وقل:

Main vocabulary

buy souvenirs	يشترى الهدايا التذكارية	make furniture	يصنع الأثاث
play music	يعزف موسيقى	walk to a small museum	يمشي إلى متحف صغير
visit ancient sites	يزور المواقع الأثرية	take photos	يلتقط صورًا

Extra vocabulary

exciting	مثير	streets	شوارع	activities	أنشطة
lamps	مصابيح / فوانيس	bracelets	أساور	necklace	عقد
smell	رائحة	furniture	أثاث	colorful (adj)	ملون
buildings	مبانٍ	Arabic (adj)	عربي	designs	تصاميم
area	منطقة	culture	ثقافة	wooden (adj)	خشبي
gate	بوابة	coins	عملات معدنية	tools	أدوات
Egyptian history	التاريخ المصري	drums	طبول	sounds	أصوات

Expressions and Phrases

walk through	يسير عبر	by hand	يدويًا	do many activities	يقوم بالعديد من الأنشطة
The smell is amazing!	الرائحة مذهلة!	It is fun to	أنه من الممتع أن	for a few minutes	لدقائق قليلة

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
watch	watched	visit	visited
smell	smelled	enjoy	enjoyed
play	played	walk	walked
smile	smiled	join	joined
laugh	laughed	work	worked

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
buy	bought	choose	chose
drink	drank	take	took
make	made	build	built
spend	spent	stand	stood

Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

يهدف هذا السؤال إلى إعطاء الطالب مساحة للتفكير في موضوع الدرس قبل البدء فيه.



Warm up

What can people do in one day in Egypt?

It is a great day in Cairo. Maged visits Khan El Khalili with his family. It is very exciting! In the old streets, they can do many **activities**⁽¹⁾. First, they buy **souvenirs**⁽²⁾ from the market. There are many beautiful things like bags, lamps, and **bracelets**⁽³⁾. His sister chooses a colorful necklace. Then, they walk through the old streets and watch people baking bread.



The smell is amazing! They also see shops where workers make **furniture**⁽⁴⁾ by hand. It is interesting to watch them work. They take more photos in the old streets. There are many beautiful doors and buildings with **Arabic designs**⁽⁵⁾. Maged stands near a big wooden gate and smiles for the camera. Then, they walk to a small museum. It has old coins, clothes, and tools from the past. They learn many new things about **Egyptian history**⁽⁶⁾. They also see some children playing with small drums in the street. They laugh and enjoy the music. Maged's brother joins them for a few minutes. It is fun to play and enjoy the sounds of Old Cairo. In the evening, they visit ancient sites near the area. They are big and beautiful! They **take many photos**⁽⁷⁾ of them.

It is a fun day. He loves spending time in Egypt and learning about its culture.

1

- | | |
|-----|-----------------------|
| (1) | أنشطة |
| (2) | الهدايا التذكارية |
| (3) | أساور |
| (4) | أثاث |
| (5) | تصاميم عربية |
| (6) | التاريخ المصري |
| (7) | يلتقط العديد من الصور |



Read again and answer: **SB** اقرأ مرة ثانية وأجب:

- 1 What do they buy from the market?
.....
- 2 Where does Maged stand to take a photo?
.....
- 3 What do they see in the small museum?
.....



The Main Ideas of the Text:

الأفكار الرئيسية في النص:

- ✓ Maged visits Khan El Khalili with his family. ماجد يزور خان الخليلي مع عائلته.
- ✓ They buy souvenirs like bags and bracelets. يشترون هدايا تذكارية مثل الحقايب والأساور.
- ✓ His sister chooses a colorful necklace. تختار أخته عقدًا ملونًا.
- ✓ They walk through the old streets and watch people bake bread. يمشون في الشوارع القديمة ويشاهدون الناس وهم يخبزون الخبز.
- ✓ They see workers make furniture by hand. يشاهدون العمال وهم يصنعون الأثاث يدويًا.
- ✓ Maged takes photos near big wooden gates. يلتقط ماجد صورًا قرب بوابات خشبية كبيرة.
- ✓ They visit a small museum with old coins and tools. يزورون متحفًا صغيرًا يحتوي على عملات وأدوات قديمة.
- ✓ His brother plays drums with children in the street. يرقع أخوه الطبول مع الأطفال في الشارع.
- ✓ Maged loves the day and learns about Egyptian culture. يحب ماجد هذا اليوم ويتعلم عن الثقافة المصرية.



Checkpoint

Choose the correct answer:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

يهدف هذا التدريب إلى قياس مدى فهمك للمفردات اللغوية.

- ① We went to the market to buy (souvenirs – carpenters – tourists – ancient sites).
- ② At the workshop, we saw a man (make – drink – eat – do) furniture.
- ③ We went to Luxor to (visit ancient sites – buy bread – play football – make furniture).
- ④ My sister used her phone to (take photos – make furniture – visit sites – buy souvenirs) of the Pyramids.



Read and complete from the box: SB

visit – make – buy

- ① We souvenirs from Khan El Khalili.
- ② Tourists come to Egypt to the ancient sites.
- ③ Carpenters furniture in Damietta.



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 My mother likes to bread for lunch.
a) bake b) wash c) walk d) drink
- 2 She wears a beautiful around her neck.
a) ring b) bracelet c) lamp d) necklace
- 3 We do many at school.
a) furniture b) activities c) sites d) foods
- 4 Tourists like to visit
a) streets b) area c) ancient sites d) furniture
- 5 We buy from Khan El Khalili.
a) fans b) souvenirs c) notebooks d) cars

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ واكمل النص باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة:

souvenirs – sites – juice – designs

My name is Samir. I usually visit ancient (1)..... with my friends. I sometimes go there with my family. My mother likes to walk through the old streets. There are many beautiful doors and buildings with Arabic (2)..... I sometimes buy some (3)..... I take photos of places we visit.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

It is a great day in Cairo. I visit Khan El Khalili with my family. It is very exciting! In the old streets, we can do many activities. First, we buy souvenirs from the market. There are many beautiful things like bags, lamps, and bracelets. My sister chooses a colorful necklace. Then, we walk through the old streets and watch people baking bread. The smell is amazing! We also see shops where workers make furniture by hand. I love spending time in Egypt and learning about its culture.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 In the old, we can do many activities.
a) shops b) streets c) restaurants d) markets
- 2 The smells amazing!
a) lamp b) bracelet c) culture d) bread

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 What can they buy from the market?
.....
- 4 Who chooses a beautiful necklace?
.....
- 5 How do workers make furniture?
.....

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكون جملاً:

- 1 learn – history – about – They – new – Egyptian – things.
.....
- 2 ancient – Ahmed – to – likes – visit – sites.
.....
- 3 loves – time – in Egypt – Eslam – spending.
.....
- 4 buy – we – First – the market – souvenirs – from.
.....
- 5 we – through – streets – Then – walk – old – the. **Super Question ?**
.....

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للأتي:

- 1 it is very delicious
.....
- 2 I love spending time in egypt
.....



Lesson 2

Ras Mohamed National Park

محمية رأس محمد



Listen and say:

استمع وقل:

Main vocabulary

coral reefs	الشعاب المرجانية	snorkel	يغطس باستخدام أنبوب التنفس
mangrove trees	أشجار المانجروف	protected area	منطقة محمية
marine life	الحياة البحرية	landscapes	المنظر الطبيعية

Extra vocabulary

clear (adj.)	صافي / واضح	turtles	السلحفاة
dolphins	دلافين	safe (adj.)	آمن
rules	قواعد	environment	البيئة
Bedouins	البدو	peaceful (adj.)	هادئ / مسالم

Expressions and Phrases

in the south of	في جنوب	many kinds of	أنواع عديدة من
take care of	يعتني بـ	lives nearby	يعيش بجوار

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
snorkel	يغطس باستخدام أنبوب التنفس	snorkeled	يتبع
protect	يحمي	follow	تبع
		visited	يُزور
		visit	

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
swim	يسبح	swam	dive
		يغطس / يغوص	dove
keep	يحافظ / يبقى	kept	learn
		يتعلم	learnt

Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

يهدف هذا السؤال إلى إعطاء الطالب مساحة للتفكير في موضوع الدرس قبل البدء فيه.



Warm up

What do you know about Ras Mohamed?

Ras Mohamed is a famous **national park**⁽¹⁾ in the south of Sinai, Egypt. It is known for its beautiful **coral reefs**⁽²⁾, colorful fish, and clear blue sea. People from all over the world visit Ras Mohamed to swim, **snorkel**⁽³⁾, and dive.

The nature in Ras Mohamed National Park is amazing. The park is home to many kinds of animals and plants. You can see sea turtles, dolphins, and many types of birds. There are also mountains and mangrove trees near the beach.

Ras Mohamed is a **protected area**⁽⁴⁾. This means that people must take care of the land, sea, and animals. It is important to follow the rules to keep the park clean and safe.

In the park, visitors learn about nature, **marine life**⁽⁵⁾, and how to protect the environment. They also learn about the culture of the local **Bedouins**⁽⁶⁾ who live nearby.

Ras Mohamed is a great place for anyone who loves the sea, animals, and **peaceful**⁽⁷⁾ **landscapes**⁽⁸⁾.



(1) محمية طبيعية

(2) الشعاب المرجانية

(3) يغطس

(4) منطقة محمية

(5) حياة بحرية

(6) البدو

(7) هادئ/ مسالم

(8) مناظر طبيعية



اقرأ مرة ثانية وأجب: SB

① Where is Ras Mohamed National Park located?

② What can visitors do at Ras Mohamed?

③ Who are the people living near Ras Mohamed?



The Main Ideas of the Text:

الأفكار الرئيسية في النص:

- ✓ Ras Mohamed is a famous national park in the south of Sinai, Egypt.
رأس محمد هي محمية طبيعية شهيرة في جنوب سيناء، مصر.
- ✓ It is known for its beautiful coral reefs, colorful fish, and clear blue sea.
وهي معروفة بشعابها المرجانية الجميلة، وأسماكها الملونة، وبحرها الأزرق الصافي.
- ✓ The park is home to many kinds of animals and plants.
المحمية هي موطن للعديد من أنواع الحيوانات والنباتات.
- ✓ Ras Mohamed is a protected area.
رأس محمد منطقة محمية.
- ✓ This means people must take care of the land, sea, and animals.
وهذا يعني أنه يجب على الناس رعاية الأرض والبحر والحيوانات.
- ✓ Ras Mohamed is a great place for anyone who loves the sea, animals, and peaceful landscapes.
رأس محمد مكان رائع لأي شخص يحب البحر والحيوانات والمناظر الطبيعية الهادئة.



Read and write T (True) or F (False): SB

- ① Ras Mohamed is in the north of Sinai. ()
- ② You can't see any mountains in Ras Mohamed National Park. ()
- ③ Visitors can snorkel and dive in the blue sea in Ras Mohame. ()
- ④ Ras Mohamed is a dangerous area. ()
- ⑤ The nature in Ras Mohamed is amazing. ()

✓ Checkpoint Choose the correct answer:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

يهدف هذا التدريب إلى قياس مدى فهمك للمفردات اللغوية.

- ① Ras Mohamed is a famous (shopping mall – national park – sports stadium – city center) in the south of Sinai, Egypt.
- ② People from all over the world visit Ras Mohamed to swim, (snorkel – jog – hike – bike), and dive.
- ③ They also learn about the culture of the local (tourists – farmers – Bedouins – fishermen).
- ④ Ras Mohamed is a great place for anyone who loves the sea, animals, and (busy cities – noisy streets – peaceful landscapes – crowded markets).

Language in use

The present simple tense زمن المضارع البسيط

- We use the present simple tense to talk about, habits and routines:

نستخدم المضارع البسيط للحديث عن العادات والروتين:

Affirmative form:

صيغة الإثبات:

I/ We/ They/ You + (inf.) ... الفعل في المصدر

e.g. We **visit** our cousins every week. e.g. The children **like** games.

He/ She/ It + (inf.) + s / es / ies ... الفعل في المصدر

e.g. It **rains** a lot in winter. e.g. Amr **listens** to music at night.

معظم الأفعال يضاف لها (s):

(visit — visits)

e.g. Mona **visits** her grandparents on the weekends.

الأفعال المنتهية بـ ss/sh/ch/o/x/z

يضاف لها (es):

(pass — passes)

e.g. Hamza never **passes** the street alone.

الأفعال المنتهية بحرف (y) مسبق بحرف ساكن، يحذف الـ (y) ويضاف لها (ies):

(study — studies)

e.g. Samar **studies** English every day.

Negative form:

صيغة النفي:

We/ They/ You + don't + (inf.) ... الفعل في المصدر

e.g. Bedouins **don't live** in the north of Egypt.

He/ She/ It + doesn't + (inf.) ... الفعل في المصدر

e.g. Samah **doesn't like** milk.



Got it:

My father (wear) glasses every day.

● (My father) فاعل مفرد، وبالتالي يجب أن يكون الفعل مضارعاً إليه (s)، لذا تكون الإجابة (wears).

Yes/No question:

السؤال (هل):

Question السؤال	Do	I/ you/ we/ they	... الفعل في المصدر (inf.)?
	Does	he/ she/ it	
Answer الإجابة	Yes,	subject (الفاعل)	do / does.
	No,		don't / doesn't.

e.g. A: Do you go to the club?

B: Yes, I do.

e.g. A: Does Nada sleep early?

B: No, she doesn't.

Wh- question:

السؤال باستخدام كلمة الاستفهام:

Wh- word كلمة الاستفهام	do does	I/ you/ we/ they he/ she/ it	...? الفعل في المصدر (inf.)
----------------------------	------------	---------------------------------	-----------------------------

e.g. A: **Where** do you **live**? B: I **live** in Cairo.



Got it:

Do they often (visiting) their grandparents?

• (Do) يأتي بعدها الفعل في المصدر، لذا تكون الإجابة (visit).

Keywords:

الكلمات الدالة:

always (دائمًا) – usually (عادة) – often (غالبًا) – sometimes (أحيانًا) – rarely (نادرًا)
never (أبداً) – every (كل) (day – week – summer – morning – night ...).

✓ Checkpoint 1. Choose the correct answer:

يهدف هذا التدريب إلى قياس مدى فهمك للقواعد اللغوية.

- Doctors (works – working – work – to work) at hospitals.
- My dad sometimes (played – plays – playing – play) video games with me.
- Nancy (wasn't – don't – isn't – doesn't) like spicy food.
- (Does – Is – Do – Are) your friends live in the city?
- How many classes do you (has – have – had – having) today?
- What (does – is – are – do) your friend do every summer?

2. Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- Adel often (study) after school.
- The children (doesn't) play in the street.
- (Does) Basel and Nader go to work by car?
- When (do) she go swimming?
- Hoda (don't) have a car.
- They (drinking) coffee every morning.

QUICK PRACTICE ON THE PRESENT SIMPLE TENSE

1 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات بين الأقواس:

- 1 Ahmed and Hala always (cleans) the kitchen for their mom.
- 2 I (washes) my face in the morning.
- 3 The restaurant is really cheap, it (don't) cost much.
- 4 Amr (don't) go on vacation every year.
- 5 How (does) you usually go to work?
- 6 How many books (do) Sara read every month?
- 7 A: Does she like coffee? B: No, she (do).
- 8 The bus usually (arriving) at 8 a.m.
- 9 (Does) Mona and Ola come early?
- 10 My aunts usually (bakes) cookies on Fridays.
- 11 What does she (has) for breakfast?
- 12 Eman usually (study) at night.
- 13 Where (did) you spend your vacation every year?
- 14 (Be) Rana okay now?
- 15 (Be) they at home today?

Super Question ?

2 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكون جملاً:

- 1 does - When - start - the - festival?
.....
- 2 always - is - happy - She - active - and. **SB**
.....
- 3 Does - early - sleep - Nada?
.....
- 4 finishes - his homework - Omar - early - never.
.....
- 5 in - usually - The bus - at 8 - arrives - morning - the.
.....

Practice



Lesson 2

Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 We learned about that live in the sea.
a) birds b) pets c) marine life d) farm animals
- 2 Many fish live in the colorful under the sea.
a) rocks b) trees c) coral reefs d) caves
- 3 I like to relax near landscapes with quiet nature.
a) noisy b) busy c) peaceful d) crowded
- 4 We visited a big with wild animals.
a) mall b) school c) national park d) market
- 5 I like because I can see fish in the water.
a) running b) reading c) snorkeling d) biking
- 6 This land is a to keep animals safe.
a) farm b) city c) protected area d) factory

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة:

rules – turtles – lions – area

The nature in Ras Mohamed National Park is amazing. The park is home to many kinds of animals and plants. You can see sea (1)....., dolphins, and many types of birds. Ras Mohamed is a protected (2)..... . This means people must take care of the land, sea, and animals. It is important to follow the (3)..... to keep the park clean and safe.

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكون جملًا:

- 1 a – park – famous – is – national – Ras Mohamed.
- 2 visit – People – Ras Mohamed – year – every.
- 3 care – must – take – environment – of – the – People.
- 4 to – It – follow – is – the rules – important.

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 My grandfather always (wear) a galabeya at home.
- 2 My friends (plays) tennis every Saturday.
- 3 She (don't) study in the afternoon. 
- 4 The teacher (check) our homework in the morning.
- 5 Salma (not watch) TV after dinner.
- 6 Egyptians (not build) their houses with wood.
- 7 (Does) you like football?
- 8 (Do) your brother speak French?
- 9 My uncle (drive) to work every day.
- 10 How (do) Omar get ready for the exam? 
- 11 Where do you (goes) on Sundays?
- 12 It (be) important to study your lessons well.
- 13 Ali (play) the piano in his music class.
- 14 The English lesson (start) at 9 a.m.
- 15 (Do) they ready to travel every week? 

5 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

- 1 where do you live

- 2 mangrove trees are near the beach

6 Write a text of (50-60) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة من (50-60) كلمة باستخدام العناصر الآتية:



"A famous national park"

Sinai – coral reefs – marine life



Lesson 3 Around Egypt حول مصر



Listen and say:

استمع وقل:

Main vocabulary

voice recordings	تسجيلات صوتية	responsibilities	مستويات
fishing nets	شباك الصيد	looms	أنوال (آلات حياكة القماش أو السجاد)

Extra vocabulary

project	مشروع	daily	يومي	fishermen	صيادو السمك
villagers	قرويون/ سكان القرية	sea breeze	نسيم البحر	wooden boats	قوارب خشبية
carpet	سجادة	rug	سجادة صغيرة	wool	صوف

Expressions and Phrases

catch fish	يصطاد السمك	work in fish factories	العمل في مصانع الأسماك
harvest the crops	يحصد المحاصيل	weaves the wool on looms	ينسج الصوف على الأنوال
dye the wool with natural colors	يصبغ الصوف بالألوان الطبيعية	feed animals	يطعم الحيوانات

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
describe يصف	described	accompany يُرافق	accompanied
repair يُصلح	repaired	work يعمل	worked
water يروي	watered	harvest يحصد	harvested
dye يصبغ	dyed	support يدعم	supported

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
catch يستطيع	caught	grow يزرع/ ينمو	grew
feed يُطعم	fed	sell يبيع	sold
spin يغزل (تدوير الصوف لصنع خيوط)	spun	weave ينسج	wove

Villages القرى

Ezbet El Borg in Damietta	عزبة البرج في دمياط	Shakhlouba in Kafr El-Sheikh	قرية شخلوبة في كفر الشيخ
Qutur in Gharbia	قرية قطور في الغربية	Bashandi in the New Valley	قرية بشندي في الوادي الجديد



Listen, read, and role-play:

استمع، اقرأ، وتبادل الأدوار:

Mr. Nader: As part of our "Know Egypt" project, we'll listen to four voice recordings from four students. They'll describe life, work, and daily responsibilities in their villages.

كجزء من مشروع «اعرف مصر»، سنستمع إلى أربعة تسجيلات صوتية من أربعة طلاب. سيتحدثون عن الحياة والعمل والمسؤوليات اليومية في قراهم.

Amina: Hello! I'm Amina from Ezbet El Borg in Damietta. People here are fishermen. I accompany my father to catch fish early in the morning. Some villagers work in fish factories or repair boats. We eat fish almost every day and enjoy the cool sea breeze.

مرحبًا! أنا أمينة من عزبة البرج في دمياط. الناس هنا يعملون كصيادين. أرافق والدي لصيد السمك في الصباح الباكر. بعض سكان القرية يعملون في مصانع الأسماك أو في إصلاح القوارب. نحن نأكل السمك تقريبًا كل يوم ونستمتع بنسيم البحر البارد.

Omar: My name is Omar. I live in Shakhlouba in Kafr El Sheikh near Lake Manzala. People fish using small wooden boats. I help my uncle clean the fishing nets. Some women also help catch fish. In the evening, we sit together and drink hot tea outside.

اسمى عمر. أعيش في شخلوبة بمحافظة كفر الشيخ قرب بحيرة المنزلة. الناس هنا يصطادون باستخدام قوارب خشبية صغيرة. أساعد عمي في تنظيف شباك الصيد. بعض النساء يساعدن أيضًا في صيد السمك. في المساء، نجلس معًا ونشرب الشاي الساخن في الخارج.

Salma: Hi! I'm Salma from Qutur in Gharbia. My family grows fruits and vegetables. We water the plants, harvest the crops, and feed our animals. On Fridays, we go to the market to sell food. Life is quiet, but we are always busy.

مرحبًا! أنا سلمى من قطور بمحافظة الغربية. عائلتي تزرع الفواكه والخضراوات. نحن نسقي النباتات، ونحصد المحاصيل، ونطعم الحيوانات. في أيام الجمعة، نذهب إلى السوق لبيع الطعام. الحياة هادئة، لكننا دائمًا مشغولون.

Hassan: Hi! I'm Hassan from Bashandy, a village in the Dakhla Oasis in the Western Desert. People in my village make carpets, rugs, and crafts. My family spins wool and weaves it on looms. I help my mother dye the wool with natural colors. Some visitors come to buy rugs from the village shops.

مرحبًا! أنا حسن من بشندي، وهي قرية في واحة الدخلة بالصحراء الغربية. الناس في قريتي يصنعون السجاد والحرف اليدوية. عائلتي تغزل الصوف وتنسجه على الأنوال. أساعد والدتي في صبغ الصوف بألوان طبيعية. يأتي بعض الزوار لشراء السجاد من متاجر القرية.

Mr. Nader: Thank you! These villages show how people in Egypt live, work, and support their families every day. Great job!

شكرًا لكم! تُظهر هذه القرى كيف يعيش الناس في مصر ويعملون ويدعمون عائلاتهم كل يوم. عمل رائع!

Read again and answer: اقرأ مرة ثانية وأجب:

- Which village do you think is the most interesting? Why?
- What job would you like to do in one of these villages?

Definitions	accompany	to go somewhere with another person	تذهب إلى مكان ما مع شخص آخر
	looms	machines for making cloth or carpets	آلات لصنع القماش أو السجاد
	fishing net	a tool made of rope or string used to catch fish	أداة مصنوعة من حبل أو خيط تستخدم لصيد الأسماك
	dye	to color cloth or wool using a special liquid	تلون (تصبغ) القماش أو الصوف باستخدام سائل خاص

The Main Ideas of the Text: الأفكار الرئيسية في النص:

- Four students talk about life in their villages. أربعة طلاب يتحدثون عن الحياة في قراهم.
- Amina lives in Ezbet El Borg. Her father is a fisherman. تعيش أمينة في عزبة البرج. والدها صياد سمك.
- She helps her father and eats fish almost every day. تساعد والدها وتتناول السمك تقريبًا كل يوم.
- Omar lives in Shakhlouba. He helps clean fishing nets. يعيش عمر في شخلوبة. يساعد في تنظيف شباك الصيد.
- People in Omar's village drink tea together in the evening. يشرب الناس في قرية عمر الشاي معًا في المساء.
- Salma lives in Qutur. Her family grows fruits and vegetables. تعيش سلمى في قطور. تزرع عائلتها الفواكه والخضراوات.
- They harvest crops and feed animals. يجمعون المحاصيل ويطعمون الحيوانات.
- Hassan lives in Bashandi. His family makes carpets and crafts. يعيش حسن في قرية بشندي. تصنع عائلته السجاد والمشغولات اليدوية.
- Hassan spins and dyes wool with natural colors. يغزل حسن ويصبغ الصوف بالألوان الطبيعية.
- These villages show how people live and work in Egypt. تُظهر هذه القرى كيف يعيش الناس ويعملون في مصر.

Checkpoint Choose the correct answer:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

يهدف هذا التدريب إلى قياس مدى فهمك للمفردات اللغوية.

- A (dye – loom – net – market) is a tool used to weave cloth.
- To (harvest – plant – wash – throw) means to collect fruits or vegetables from a farm.
- A (farmer – fisherman – carpenter – teacher) is someone who catches fish.
- People (grow – throw – dye – clean) fruits and vegetables on farms.
- To (accompany – weave – spin – support) means to help and care for others.

Pronunciation

/ər/



Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشير، وقل:

To say the /ər/ sound, open your mouth slightly, say "eh," then add the /r/ sound. It is one sound, like in "wear" or "stare".

لنطق صوت /ə/، افتح فمك قليلاً، وقل "eh"، ثم أضف صوت /r/. إنه صوت واحد، كما في "stare" أو "wear".

1



bear دب

2



stare يحدق

3



square ميدان/ساحة

4



scared خائف

5



wear يرتدي

6



airport مطار

Extra vocabulary

hare	أرنب بري	pear	كمثرى	there	هناك
where ...?	أين ...؟	nightmare	كابوس		



Read, underline, and write only the words that have the /ər/ sound:

① Where did your aunt go last week?

SB

② I had a nightmare last night that scared me.

SB

③ The bear stared at the square all day.

④ Where is the pear I saw on the chair?

⑤ Did you wear your jacket at the airport?



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 A is a tool made of rope or string used to catch fish.
a) dye b) fishing net c) village d) loom
- 2 are the things you must do.
a) Countries b) Games c) Responsibilities d) Baskets
- 3 are machines for making cloth or carpets.
a) Looms b) Fishing nets c) Ropes d) Villages
- 4 To go somewhere with another person means to
a) weave b) spin c) accompany d) describe
- 5 When you at something, you look at it for a long time.
a) stare b) walk c) smell d) jump
- 6 When I see a lion, I feel
a) bored b) scared c) good d) careless

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة:

catch – looms – harvest – market

There are many villages in Egypt. People live and work hard there. In Qutur, people grow food and (1)..... the crops. In Ezbet El Borg, villagers fish using small wooden boats. Some women help (2)..... fish. In Bashandi, while some people make carpets on (3)..... . These jobs help families and support them.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Each student in the "Know Egypt" project talks about a different village. Amira lives in Ezbet El Borg. Her father is a fisherman, and she goes fishing with her father early in the morning. Eslam lives in Shakhlouba and he always helps his father clean fishing nets. Eman lives in Qutur. Her family grows fruit and vegetables and sells them in the market. Ahmed lives in Bashandi. His family makes carpets and crafts. He helps them dye the wool with natural colors.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Amira goes fishing with her
a) brother b) uncle c) father d) teacher
- The underlined pronoun "them" refers to
a) animals b) fruit and vegetables
c) carpets and rugs d) shops

B Answer the following questions:

- When does Amira go fishing?
.....
- Where does Eslam live?
.....
- Summarize the text in two sentences.
.....

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكون جملاً:

- helps – crafts – Hassan – family – with – his – the.
.....
- fish – catch – to – father – my – I – accompany.
.....
- enjoy – sea – the – breeze – We – cool.
.....
- factories – boats – Some villagers – fish – repair – or work in. **Super Question ?**
.....

5 Write a text of (50-60) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة من (50 - 60) كلمة باستخدام العناصر الآتية:

"Life in a village"

What jobs do people do in the village? How do children help their families?

What makes life in the village special?

.....

.....

.....

.....



Lessons 4 & 5

Writing & Project



A Day in My School يوم في مدرستي

Listen and say:

استمع وقل:

Main vocabulary

salute the flag	يُحيي العلم	pack schoolbag	يرتب/ يجهز حقيبة المدرسة
play in the playground	يلعب في ساحة المدرسة / الفناء	take out books	يخرج الكتب من الحقيبة

Extra vocabulary

normal (adj.)	عادي / طبيعي	national (adj.)	وطني	anthem	نشيد (وطني)
lesson	درس / حصة	groups	مجموعات	pairs	أزواج (اثنين معًا)
topics	موضوعات	tricky (adj.)	صعب / خادع	classrooms	فصول دراسية

Subjects

Arabic	اللغة العربية	math	الرياضيات	English	اللغة الإنجليزية
science	العلوم	social studies	الدراسات الاجتماعية	religion	التربية الدينية
computer	الحاسب الآلي	P.E.	التربية البدنية		

Expressions and Phrases

I hope you're doing well.	أتمنى أن تكون في حالة جيدة.	have a quick breakfast	يتناول وجبة إفطار سريعة
work in groups or pairs	العمل في مجموعات أو أزواج	a bit tricky	صعب / خادع بعض الشيء
try my best	أبذل قصارى جهدي	have lessons	يأخذ حصصًا / دروسًا
feel a bit tired	يشعر بالتعب قليلاً	go home	يذهب للمنزل
rest a little	يستريح قليلاً	do my homework	أقوم بواجبي المنزلي
What about you?	ماذا عنك؟	bye for now	إلى اللقاء الآن

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
salute (يُحيي (تحية)	saluted	try يحاول	tried
chat يتبادل الحديث	chatted	end ينهى	ended
laugh يضحك	laughed	rest يستريح	rested

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
tell يخبر	told	wake up يستيقظ	woke up
get dressed يرتدي ملابس	got dressed	leave يغادر	left
begin يبدأ	began	stand يقف	stood



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

New Messages
✖

To: mark@gmail.com ✖

From: fady@gmail.com ✖

Subject: Daily school life in Egypt

Hi Mark,

How are you? I hope you're doing well. I want to tell you about a **typical day**⁽¹⁾ at my school here in Egypt.

My day starts. **early**⁽²⁾ I wake up around 6:30 a.m., get dressed, and have a quick breakfast—usually bread, cheese, and fruit.

The school day begins at 7:30. We start it by standing **in line**,⁽³⁾ **saluting the flag**,⁽⁴⁾ and singing the **national anthem**.⁽⁵⁾ Then we go to our classrooms and begin our lessons. Our first subject is usually Arabic.

Next, we have subjects like math, English, and science. Some topics are a bit **tricky**,⁽⁶⁾ but I try my best. At around 10:15, we have a short **break**⁽⁷⁾. I usually eat a **sandwich**,⁽⁸⁾ play with my friends, **chat**⁽⁹⁾ and laugh.

Later, we have more lessons like social studies, **religion**,⁽¹⁰⁾ or computer. I enjoy learning how to use the computer in class. However, my favorite subject is **P.E.**⁽¹¹⁾.

The school day ends at 1:30 p.m. I usually feel a bit tired, but I'm happy after a good day. I go home, eat lunch, rest a little, and then do my homework.

That's what a school day looks like for me. What about you?

Bye for now,

Fady

(1) يوم نموذجي

(2) مبكرًا

(3) في طابور

(4) تحية العلم

(5) النشيد الوطني

(6) صعب/ خادع

(7) استراحة/ فسحة

(8) ساندويتش

(9) يدرّش

(10) دين

(11) تربية بدنية

Send

How to write an informal email كيف تكتب بريدًا إلكترونيًا غير رسمي

- An informal email is a message you write to friends or family.

البريد الإلكتروني غير الرسمي هو رسالة تكتبها إلى الأصدقاء أو العائلة.



Tip!

You can send an informal email to a friend or someone you know very well. Make sure you use the present simple tense to talk about your routine or a typical day.

يمكنك أن ترسل بريدًا إلكترونيًا غير رسمي إلى صديق أو إلى شخص تعرفه جيدًا. تأكد من استخدام زمن المضارع البسيط عندما تتحدث عن روتينك أو يومك المعتاد.

- When you write an informal email, remember to include:

New Messages			
To:	mark@school.com	x	The receiver's email address إيميل المرسل إليه
From:	fady@school.com	x	The sender's email address إيميل الراسل
Subject:	Daily school life in Egypt		The subject of the email موضوع البريد الإلكتروني

Hi Mark,	An informal greeting تحية غير رسمية
School begins at 7:30. We start the day outside by standing in line, saluting the flag, and singing the national anthem. Then we go to our classrooms and begin our lessons.	A main body with details جزء أساسي يحتوي على تفاصيل
I'm happy after a good day.	Contractions الاختصارات
I wake up... My day starts... My dad drives me	Using 1 st person pronouns (I, my, me, etc.)
Bye for now,	Closing in a friendly tone الاختتام بنبذة ودودة
Fady	Sender's signature



Tip!

Formal language لغة رسمية

Informal language لغة غير رسمية

Hello	مرحبًا	Hi	مرحبًا
normal	طبيعي / معتاد	typical	عادي / معتاد
talk	يتحدث	chat	يدرّش
work hard	يعمل بجد	try my best	أبذل قصاري جهدي



The Main Ideas of the Text:

الأفكار الرئيسية في النص:

- Fady tells us about his normal day at school in Egypt.
يخبرنا فادي عن يومه العادي في المدرسة في مصر.
- His day starts early. He wakes up at 6:30 a.m. يستيقظ الساعة 6:30 صباحًا.
- He gets dressed and eats breakfast — bread, cheese, and fruit.
يرتدى ملابسه ويتناول الإفطار — خبز وجبن وفاكهة.
- School begins at 7:30. The students stand in line, salute the flag, and sing the national anthem.
تبدأ المدرسة الساعة 7:30. يقف الطلاب في الطابور يحيون العلم ويغنون النشيد الوطني.
- Their first subject is usually Arabic. Fady really enjoys it.
المادة الأولى عادةً ما تكون اللغة العربية. يستمتع فادي بها كثيرًا.
- At 10:15, they have a short break. Fady eats a snack and talks with his friends.
في الساعة 10:15، لديهم استراحة قصيرة. يتناول فادي وجبة خفيفة ويتحدث مع أصدقائه.
- Later, they have English, science, religion, and more. Fady's favorite subject is P.E.
لاحقًا، لديهم اللغة الإنجليزية والعلوم والدين والمزيد. والمادة المفضلة لدى فادي هي التربية البدنية.
- The school day ends at 1:30 p.m. ينتهي اليوم الدراسي في الساعة 1:30 مساءً.
- He goes home, eats lunch, rests, and does his homework.
يعود إلى المنزل، يتناول الغداء، يستريح، ويؤدي واجباته المنزلية.

✓ Checkpoint Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

يهدف هذا التدريب إلى قياس مدى فهمك للمفردات اللغوية.

- 1 In the morning, students sing the national
a) music b) poem c) anthem d) line
- 2 Fady's first subject is usually
a) English b) Arabic c) math d) science
- 3 At 10:15, students have a short
a) lesson b) class c) walk d) break
- 4 Fady usually feels a bit after school.
a) relaxed b) tired c) quiet d) worried



Project

Making a Poster About Daily Life in a Governorate

إعداد ملصق عن الحياة اليومية في محافظة

Explore the Daily Life in Beni Suef



People wake up early, they clean the house and **prepare breakfast**⁽¹⁾.

Many people work on farms. They grow **cotton**⁽²⁾, beans, and vegetables.



Some people work in factories. They make **cement**⁽³⁾ and clothes.

At noon, families eat lunch together. They eat rice, bread, and vegetables.

- (1) يُجهز/ يُعد الإفطار
- (2) قطن
- (3) يُعد أسمنتًا

To make a good poster, you should:

- Write a clear and attractive title.
- Add expressive pictures or drawings.
- Write short, but detailed sentences about daily life.

تكتب جملاً قصيرة ولكن تحتوى على تفاصيل عن الحياة اليومية.

- Organize the parts clearly (title – pictures – description).

تنظم الأجزاء بوضوح (العنوان – الصور – الوصف).

لكي تصمم بوسترًا جيدًا، يجب أن:
تكتب عنوانًا واضحًا وجذابًا.
تضيف صورًا أو رسومات معبرة.



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 Students the flag in the morning.
a) salute b) hold c) draw d) wave
- 2 At school, students stand outside in in the morning.
a) books b) homework c) subjects d) lines
- 3 Amr and his friends play in the during break.
a) classroom b) library c) playground d) canteen
- 4 I always my schoolbag before I sleep.
a) pack b) talk c) salute d) play
- 5 I enjoy with my friends on the weekends.
a) crying b) hanging out
c) packing school bag d) taking out
- 6 This question is very I can't answer it!
a) tricky b) national c) normal d) easy

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة:

computer – flag – dressed – anthem

Hady gets up at 6:30 a.m. and gets (1)..... before going to school.
At 7:30, he starts his school day by singing the national (2)..... with his friends.
He enjoys his lessons, especially when they learn how to use the (3).....
After school, he goes home and eats his lunch.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Omar wakes up early and has a light breakfast. He goes to school at 7:00 a.m. with his dad. At 7:30, the school day starts with saluting the flag and singing the national anthem. Omar enjoys his Arabic lesson and loves P.E. the most. After school, he feels tired but happy. He has lunch with his family when he gets home. Then he takes a short nap to rest. In the evening, he does his homework and watches TV. Finally, he goes to bed early to get ready for the next day.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Omar goes to school with his
a) brother b) mom c) friend d) dad
- The underlined word "anthem" means
a) a kind of food b) a national song c) a flag d) break time

B Answer the following questions:

- When does Omar wake up?
- What is Omar's favorite subject?
- How does Omar feel after school?

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكون جملاً:

- grow – vegetables – cotton – and – Farmers.
.....
- factories – in – Some – work – people.
.....
- football – playground – in – the – We – play.
.....
- in line – standing – start – outside – We – the day – by. Super Question ?
.....

5 Write an informal email of (50-60) words to your friend Sam in England to describe your day at school. Your name is Bassem and your email address is bassem@gmail.com. Your friend's email is sam@gamil.com:

اكتب بريداً إلكترونياً من (50 - 60) كلمة إلى صديقك Sam لتخبره عن يومك في الدراسة:



New Messages
_ ↻ ✕

To:

From:

Subject:

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Unit 1

REVIEW



يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من مراجعة أهم الأجزاء التي وردت بالوحدة.

Lesson (1)

buy souvenirs	يشترى الهدايا التذكارية	lamps	مصابيح / فوانيس
make furniture	يصنع الأثاث	bracelets	أساور
play music	يعزف موسيقى	smell	رائحة
walk to a small museum	يمشي إلى متحف صغير	furniture	أثاث
visit ancient sites	يزور المواقع الأثرية	necklace	عقد
take photos	يلتقط صورًا	culture	ثقافة

Lesson (2)

coral reefs	الشعاب المرجانية	national park	منتزه وطني / محمية طبيعية
snorkel	يقطس باستخدام أنبوب التنفس	environment	البيئة
mangrove trees	أشجار المانجروف	safe	آمن
protected area	منطقة محمية	rules	قواعد
marine life	الحياة البحرية	Bedouins	البدو
landscapes	المناظر الطبيعية	peaceful	هادئ / مسالم

Lesson (3)

voice recordings	تسجيلات صوتية	responsibilities	مستويات
fishing nets	شباك الصيد	looms	الأوال (أثاث حياة) القماش أو السجاد
carpet/rug	سجاد	sea breeze	نسيم البحر
villagers	قرويون / سكان القرية	wooden boats	قوارب خشبية
fishermen	صيادو السمك	project	مشروع
stare	يحدق	square	ميدان / ساحة

Lessons (4 and 5)

take out books	يُخرج الكتب	salute the flag	يُحي القلم
pack schoolbag	يرتب/ يجهّز حقيبة المدرسة	play in the playground	يلعب في ساحة المدرسة/ الفناء
normal	عادي/ طبيعي	national	وطني
anthem	نشيد (وطني)	lesson	درس/ حصة
trivia	معلومات عامة ممتعة	groups	مجموعات
pairs	أزواج (اثنين معًا)	tricky	صعب/ خادع

Language in Use

• The Present Simple Tense:

نستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط للحديث عن الحقائق والعادات والروتين.

Form	I/ You/ We/ They	He/ She/ It
Affirmative form: صيغة الإثبات	Subj. + (inf.) ... الفعل في المصدر e.g. I listen to music at night.	Subj. + (inf.) ... s, es, ies ... e.g. She writes her homework of 7 pm.
Negative form: صيغة النفي	Subj. + don't + (inf.) ... e.g. We don't like chocolate cake.	Subj. + doesn't + (inf.) ... e.g. Adam doesn't read a story every week.
Yes/ No question: السؤال بـ (هل)	Do + subj. + (inf.) ... e.g. Do you work on the weekends?	Does + subj. + (inf.) ... e.g. Does Reem listen to music?
Wh- question: السؤال باستخدام كلمات الاستفهام	Wh-word + do + subj. + (inf.) ... e.g. What sports do the children play ?	Wh-word + does + subj. + (inf.) ... e.g. When does Sara go to bed?

Unit 1

CHECK YOUR VOCABULARY



تأكد من حفظك لكلمات الدروس قبل البدء في إجابة اختبار الوحدة.

Lesson 1	الكلمة بالعربية	الكلمة بالإنجليزية
furniture		يصنع الأثاث
lamps		يعزف الموسيقى
necklace		يلتقط صورًا
culture		يمشي إلى متحف صغير
bracelets		يزور المواقع الأثرية
buildings		يشترى الهدايا التذكارية

Lesson 2	الكلمة بالعربية	الكلمة بالإنجليزية
peaceful		أشجار المانجروف
protected area		الحياة البحرية
national park		الشعاب المرجانية
Bedouins		المناظر الطبيعية
rules		منطقة محمية

Lesson 3	الكلمة بالعربية	الكلمة بالإنجليزية
project		يحدث
fishermen		تسجيلات صوتية
carpet		شباك الصيد
wool		الأنوال
square		مستويات

Lessons 4 and 5	الكلمة بالعربية	الكلمة بالإنجليزية
normal		يُخرج الكتب
tricky		يجهز حقيبة المدرسة
social studies		يلعب في ساحة المدرسة
pairs		يُحى القلم
lesson		نشيد (وطني)

يهدف هذا التدريب إلى قياس مدى حفظ الطالب لتصريفات الأفعال.

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Present	Past	Present	Past
dry	.....	.....	accompanied
.....	dove	spin	.....
swim	.....	.....	wove
.....	left	sing	.....
speak	.....	.....	saluted

”لتسميع كلمات أكثر خاصة بهذه الوحدة .. اذهب إلى كراسة التسميع آخر الكتاب“.



لكن تتمكن من كتابة الموضوعات بشكل مميز، اتبع هذه الخطوات.

How to write about "Ras Mohamed National Park":

- o Ras Mohamed is a + تعريف المكان وموقعه.
- o It has + الأماكن التي توجد به.
- o The park has + الحيوانات الموجودة هناك.
- o Visitors learn about + ما يتعلمه الناس عن المكان.

"Ras Mohamed National Park"

Ras Mohamed is a famous national park in Sinai, Egypt. It has coral reefs, fish, and clear sea. Visitors can swim, snorkel, and dive. The park has turtles, dolphins, and birds. It's a protected area, so people must follow rules. Visitors learn about nature, marine life, and Bedouin culture.

How to write about "Daily school life in Egypt":

- o My school day in Egypt starts at + وقت.
- o We + ماتقومون به في الصباح.
- o I study subjects like + المواد التي تدرسها.
- o We have a short break to + ماتقومون به في الاستراحة.
- o After school ends I + ماتفعله بعد انتهاء اليوم الدراسي.

"Daily school life in Egypt"

To: samir@gmail.com

From: Ahmed@gmail.com

Subject: Daily school life in Egypt

Hi Samir,

How are you? I hope you're doing well. My school day in Egypt starts at 7:30. We line up, salute the flag, and sing the anthem. I study subjects like Arabic, math, English, and P.E. We have a short break to eat and play. After school ends at 1:30, I eat lunch, rest, and do my homework. What about you?

Bye for now,

Ahmed

1 Read and complete using words from the box:

landscapes – coral reefs – culture – protected – clean and safe

- 1 Ras Mohamed is a area, so people must care for it.
- 2 It's important to keep the park
- 3 People enjoy the quiet and beautiful in Ras Mohamed National Park.
- 4 Ras Mohamed is full of animals, plants, and colorful under its sea.
- 5 Visitors can learn about the of the local people.

2 Complete the sentences with the Present Simple of these verbs:

visit – do – not like – play – go – read – cook

- 1 What time you usually to bed on school nights?
- 2 We the library every Friday to borrow books.
- 3 My sister volleyball with her school team.
- 4 Ahmed vegetables, but he eats fruit.
- 5 Their grandmother always dinner for the whole family.
- 6 Do they the newspaper every morning?

3 Write about the daily life of people in your village/ city.

Remember to include these points:

- Name of the place.
- Places in the village/ city.
- A tradition or something special.
- Daily routine.
- People's jobs or activities.
- Your opinion or feeling.

.....

.....

.....

.....



Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

4

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

- We buy from the market.
a) photos b) games c) souvenirs d) drinks
- The smell of the bread is
a) bad b) amazing c) strange d) boring
- We also see shops where workers make by hand.
a) furniture b) toys c) shoes d) movies
- We visit in the evening.
a) schools b) ancient sites c) beaches d) houses



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1.5

- My sister chooses a colorful to wear around her neck.
a) bag b) lamp c) bracelet d) necklace
- Handmade baskets and jewelry are called
a) furniture b) crafts c) culture d) uniforms
- In our village, people weave rugs using
a) looms b) ovens c) bikes d) hammers

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة:

1.5

looms – harvest – spins – fishing nets

SB

People in Egyptian villages do different kinds of work. In some villages, people are fishermen who go fishing every day. They fish using small wooden (1).....
In other places, farmers (2)..... the crops and sell them in the market. In Hassan's village, his family (3)..... wool and makes carpets at home. All families help each other to live and work together.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

7

I'm Ahmed. I wake up at 6:30 a.m., get dressed, and have breakfast. School starts at 7:30. We stand in line, salute the flag, and sing the national anthem. Our lessons begin with Arabic, followed by math, English, and science. After a short break at 10:15, we eat snacks, play, and chat. Later, we study subjects like social studies, religion, or computer. I enjoy using the computer, but my favorite subject is P.E. School ends at 1:30. I go home, have lunch, rest a little, and then do my homework.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 We stand in line, salute the
a) class b) school c) flag d) teacher
- 2 He does his homework school.
a) after b) before c) at d) with

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 When does the school start?
- 4 What subjects does he study at school?
- 5 When is the break?



Writing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكون جملاً:

1

1 stands – a – gate – wooden – She – near – big.

2 is – protected – Ras Mohamed – a – area.

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات بين الأقواس:

4

1 What language (does) Bedouins use?

2 That man (move) to another country every year. **SB**

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

4

1 we visit beautiful sites

2 students salute the flag in the morning

8 Write a text of (50-60) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة من (50 - 60) كلمة باستخدام العناصر الآتية:

7

"Your daily routine"

study – eat – sleep





Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

4

- 1 Salma's family grows
 a) flowers and herbs b) fruits and vegetables
 c) rice and wheat d) trees and cotton
- 2 They go to the market every
 a) Monday b) Thursday c) Friday d) Sunday
- 3 Hassan's family makes
 a) pans b) shoes c) rugs d) tables
- 4 Hassan helps his mother the wool.
 a) wash b) dye c) cut d) sell



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

1.5

- 1 This rug is made of
 a) plastic b) gold c) paper d) wool
- 2 I always my school bag in the evening.
 a) pack b) buy c) weave d) spin
- 3 My favorite is P.E.
 a) color b) meal c) subject d) tool

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة:

1.5

bracelets – drums – furniture – museum

Maged visits Khan El Khalili with his family. They buy souvenirs like bags and (1)..... They walk in the old streets and see people baking bread. They also watch workers making (2)..... by hand. Later, they take photos near wooden gates and visit a small museum with old coins and tools. In the street, they see children play (3)..... and enjoy the music.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

7

Many children in Egyptian villages help their families every day. Amina lives in Ezbet El Borg. She helps her father catch fish in the morning. Omar is from Shakhloba. He cleans the fishing nets with his uncle. Salma's family grows vegetables in Qutur. They water the plants and sell food at the market. Hassan lives in Bashandy. His family makes carpets. He helps his mother dye the wool. The children are happy to help their families. They learn useful skills and enjoy working together. Life in the village is busy, but it is full of care and love.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Omar helps his uncle
a) fix shoes b) clean nets c) grow vegetables d) make rugs
- The underlined word "happy" is close in meaning to
a) sad b) excited c) angry d) tired

B Answer the following questions:

- Where does Salma's family sell food?
- How does Hassan help his mother?
- Why is life in the village special?



Writing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكون جملاً:

1

1 cries – at – The baby – night – a lot.

2 good – I'm – after – happy – a – day.

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات بين الأقواس:

4

1 When does the train (leaving)?

2 My uncles (works) in the USA.

7 Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

4

1 which village do you prefer

2 nada lives in egypt.

8 Write an informal email of (50-60) words to your friend Hazem to tell him about your daily life in your village. Your name is Shady and your email address is shady@gmail.com. Your friends email address is hazem@gmail.com:

4

اكتب بريداً إلكترونياً غير رسمي من (50 - 60) كلمة إلى صديقك حازم لتخبره عن حياتك اليومية في قريتك:



New Messages
✖

To:

From:

Subject:

.....

.....

.....

.....



A. Language Functions

1 Read and complete the dialog:

crops – breeze – weave – villages – nets

Mr. Neder: We'll hear students describe life and work in their (1)

Amina: I fish with my dad and enjoy the sea (2)

Omar: I clean fishing (3) and drink tea outside with family.

Selma: We grow, harvest (4) and sell them at the Friday market.

Hassan: We (5) wool rugs and dye them with natural colors.

B. Vocabulary and Structures

2 Read and circle the odd one out and replace it with the correct word:

اقرأ وضع دائرة حول الكلمة المخلفة واستبدالها بالكلمة الصحيحة:

1	cow	sheep	goat	bus	.....
2	plant	grow	harvest	square	.....
3	space	clean	quiet	noisy	.....
4	wheat	corn	rice	chair	.....
5	former	fisherman	carpenter	tricky	.....

3 Choose the correct answer:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 My grandparents (live – lives – living) in the Dokhla Oasis in the western Desert.
- 2 My father (ages – get – getting) up early to go fishing.
- 3 He doesn't (sell – sells – selling) crafts at the market.
- 4 Omar and I (help – helps – helping) clean the fishing nets.
- 5 Does she (go – goes – going) to the market on Fridays?
- 6 We sing the national (school – subject – anthem) in the morning.
- 7 (Bedouins – Teachers – Fishermen – Craftsmen) live in the desert.
- 8 To (die – dye – try) something is to color it using a special liquid.
- 9 We must keep it safe. It's a (dangerous – polluted – protected) area.
- 10 People sell handmade (plants – crafts – buildings) in the market.

C. Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following passage, then answer the following questions:

اقرأ الفقرة التالية وأجب عن الأسئلة:

Tim Islam: I go to school at 7:00 a.m. My dad drives me. We start the day by saluting the flag and singing the national anthem. Our first subject is Arabic. I enjoy working in groups. At 10:15, we have a short break. I eat a snack and talk with my friends.

A Answer the following questions:

- 1 How does Islam go to school?
- 2 What is the first subject at school?
- 3 What does Islam do at break time?

B Choose the correct answer:

- 4 The general idea of the text is about (home – school day – food).
- 5 At school, they sing the (schoolbag – school rules – national anthem).

D. Writing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكون جملًا:

- 1 vegetables – their – Villagers – grow – own.
- 2 usually – school – We – at – 7:30 – start.
- 3 with – looms – carpets – make – They.
- 4 school – go – your – Does – brother – to?
- 5 Arabic – home – speak – We – at.

6 Write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences using the following guiding elements:

اكتب فقرة إرشادية من خمس جمل على:

"Ras Mohamed National Park"

coral reefs – snorkel – dolphins – protect – culture

Unit

2

Our Nature

طبيعتنا



Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit, the student will be able to:

• بنهاية هذه الوحدة، سيكون الطالب قادراً على:

Speaking:

- talk about how to grow a plant step by step.
- describe the weather in different places.
- identify and accurately pronounce the phonemes /eɪ/ and /ɪ/.

• يتحدث عن كيفية زراعة النباتات خطوة بخطوة.

• يصف الطقس في أماكن مختلفة.

• يميز وينطق بدقة الصوتين /eɪ/ و /ɪ/.

Listening:

- listen to short texts to identify the main idea.
- identify the specific details in a listening text.

• يستمع إلى نصوص قصيرة لتحديد الفكرة الرئيسية.

• يحدد التفاصيل الدقيقة في نص استماعي.

Reading:

- answer comprehension questions about plants, weather, and animal habitats in Egypt.

• يجيب عن أسئلة الفهم حول النباتات والطقس وبيئات الحيوانات في مصر.

- identify main ideas in a text.

• يحدد الأفكار الرئيسية في النص.

- identify supporting details.

• يحدد التفاصيل الداعمة.

Writing:

- write sentences using the present continuous tense.
- write a short story about an experience or trip.

• يكتب جملًا باستخدام زمن المضارع المستمر.

• يكتب قصة قصيرة عن تجربة أو رحلة.



Lesson 1

Caring for plants

العناية بالنباتات



Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر، وقل:

Main vocabulary

natural fertilizer	سماد طبيعي	weeds	الأعشاب الضارة	pull out	يسحب / يشد
water	يروي / يسقى	plant	يزرع		
Herbs					
basil	ريحان	mint	نعناع	parsley	بقدونس
hibiscus	الكركديه	jasmine	الياسمين		

Extra vocabulary

incredible (adj.)	لا يُصدق / مذهل	sunlight	أشعة الشمس	care	رعاية / عناية
dishes	أطباق / أكلات	flavor	نكهة	health	الصحة
balcony	الشرفة (البلكونة)	tasty (adj.)	شهي / لذيذ	guava	جوافة
fig	تين	fruit	ثمرة	sweet (adj.)	حلو (مسكر)
olives	زيتون	oil	زيت	insects	حشرات
active (adj.)	نشط	fresh (adj.)	طازج	shade	ظل

Expressions and Phrases

care for / take care of	يُعتنى به	grow well	تنمو بشكل جيد	smell lovely / smell amazing	رائحتها مذهلة
taste good	طعمه لذيذ	take time	يستغرق وقتًا	full of	مليء / غني بـ
check for	يتحقق من وجود	It sounds like	يبدو وكأنه	hard work	عمل شاق

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
pull	pulled	add	added
relax	relaxed	taste	tasted
care	cared	check	checked

Irregular verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
keep	kept	grow	grew



Listen, read, and role-play:

استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار:



Laila

Grandpa, your garden looks incredible! How do you keep it so green and healthy?

جدى، حديقتك رائعة! كيف تحافظ عليها خضراء وصحية؟

Thank you, Laila. I take care of it every day. Plants need water, sunlight, and care to grow well.

شكراً لك يا ليلي. أعتنى بها يوميًا. تحتاج النباتات إلى الماء وأشعة الشمس والعناية لتنمو جيدًا.



Grandpa



Laila

What kinds of plants do you have here?

ما أنواع النباتات التي لديك هنا؟

I grow herbs like basil, mint, and parsley. We use them in many Egyptian meals. Some add flavor, and others are good for health.

أزرع أعشابًا مثل الريحان والنعناع والبقدونس. نستخدمها في العديد من الأطباق المصرية. بعضها يُضيف نكهة، والبعض الآخر مفيد للصحة.



Grandpa



Laila

Oh, Dad drinks mint tea every evening on the balcony. It helps him relax.

أوه، أبي يشرب شاي النعناع كل مساء على الشرفة. يساعده على الاسترخاء.

Yes, it tastes good. I also grow hibiscus and jasmine. They smell lovely, and we use hibiscus to make a tasty drink.

أجل، طعمه لذيذ. أزرع أيضًا الكركديه والياسمين. رائحتهما جميلة، ونستخدم الكركديه لصنع مشروب لذيذ.



Grandpa



Laila

Mom makes hibiscus tea all the time! And jasmine smells amazing at night.

أمي تُحضّر شاي الكركديه طوال الوقت! ورائحة الياسمين رائعة في الليل.

I have guava and fig trees, too. Their fruit is sweet and healthy. Over there are the olive trees.

لدي أيضًا أشجار جوافة وتين. ثمارها حلوة وصحية. وهناك توجد أشجار زيتون.



Grandpa



Laila

Wow! Do they really grow olives?

رائع! هل يزرعون الزيتون حقًا؟

Yes. Olives take time to grow, but they are full of oil. People grew olive trees in Egypt many years ago—and we still do.

أجل. يستغرق الزيتون وقتًا لينمو، لكنه غني بالزيت. زرع الناس أشجار الزيتون في مصر منذ سنوات عديدة، وما زلنا نزرعها.



Grandpa



Laila

That's cool! How do you care for all these plants?

رائع! كيف تعتني بكل هذه النباتات؟

I water them early in the morning, pull out weeds, and check for insects. Sometimes I use natural fertilizer.

أسقيها في الصباح الباكر، وأزيل الأعشاب الضارة، وأتحقق من وجود الحشرات. أحيانًا أستخدم سمادًا طبيعيًا.



Grandpa



Laila

It sounds like hard work.

يبدو الأمر شاقًا.



Read again and answer: SB

- 1 What kinds of herbs does Grandpa grow in his garden?
- 2 Where does Laila's dad like to drink mint tea?
- 3 Why does Grandpa take care of his plants every day?
- 4 How does Grandpa care for the plants in his garden?

The Main Ideas of the Text:

الأفكار الرئيسية في النص:

- ✓ Grandpa's garden looks incredible, green, and healthy.
حديقة جدي تبدو رائعة، خضراء وصحية.
- ✓ He grows herbs like basil, mint, and parsley for Egyptian meals.
يزرع أعشابًا كالريحان والنعناع والبقدونس لتستخدم في الأطباق المصرية.
- ✓ He also grows hibiscus and jasmine, which smell lovely.
يزرع أيضًا الكركديه والياسمين، اللذان يتميزان برائحتهما الزكية.
- ✓ Grandpa has guava and fig trees with sweet and healthy fruit.
يملك جدي أشجار جوافة وتين ذات ثمار حلوة وصحية.
- ✓ He also has olive trees, full of oil, grown in Egypt many years ago.
يملك أيضًا أشجار زيتون غنية بالزيت، تُزرع في مصر منذ سنوات طويلة.
- ✓ He cares for plants by watering them, pulling out weeds, and checking for insects.
يعتني بالنباتات بريّتها، وإزالة الأعشاب الضارة، والتأكد من عدم وجود الحشرات.
- ✓ Sometimes he uses natural fertilizer.
يستخدم أحيانًا سمادًا طبيعيًا.



Tip!

Listen carefully for main ideas and important details to understand the text and answer questions correctly.

استمع بعناية للأفكار الرئيسية والتفاصيل المهمة لفهم النص والإجابة عن الأسئلة بشكل صحيح.

✓ Checkpoint Choose the correct answer:

يهدف هذا التدريب إلى قياس مدى فهمك للمفردات اللغوية.

- ① To get organic food, we use natural (**tools** – **gardens** – **sweets** – **fertilizer**).
- ② The flowers can't grow because of the (**water** – **sunlight** – **weeds** – **oil**).
- ③ We (**took care** – **pulled out** – **grew well** – **took time**) the dry leaves from the garden.
- ④ (**Orange** – **Potato** – **Parsley** – **Banana**) is a green herb.
- ⑤ She added parsley to give the meat a nice (**flavor** – **favorite** – **fig** – **health**).
- ⑥ My mom puts a/an (**plant** – **fertilizer** – **weed** – **olive**) on each cheese sandwich.



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)



- 1 Ahmed is a/an
 a) engineer b) vet c) teacher d) farmer
- 2 He grows like basil, mint, and parsley.
 a) fruits b) herbs c) vegetables d) meals
- 3 He has guava, fig, and trees.
 a) olive b) potato c) carrot d) date
- 4 Plants give us food, air, and shade.
 a) tall b) old c) fresh d) small

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Since ancient times, people used olives to make
 a) cake b) drink c) oil d) wood
- 2 My brother and I have a plant, we it every day.
 a) play b) send c) grow d) water
- 3 is a sweet healthy and tasty drink.
 a) Soda b) Soup c) Olive oil d) Hibiscus tea
- 4 Basil is a green It smells fresh and nice.
 a) flower b) fruit c) herb d) tree
- 5 Farmers fruits like guavas and figs.
 a) draw b) help c) grow d) pull
- 6 The nurse the old man every day.
 a) takes time b) cares for c) grows well d) sounds like

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

natural – weeds – sweet – oil

Grandpa has a very big olive tree. It is full of olives that produce plenty of olive (1)..... People grew olive trees in Egypt many years ago. Grandpa waters his plants in the morning, pulls out (2)....., checks for insects, and uses (3)..... fertilizer. It's hard work, but it keeps him active and happy. Plants give food, fresh air, and shade.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Laila's grandpa has an incredible garden. Grandpa cares for it every day. Plants in his garden need water, sunlight, and care. He grows herbs like basil, mint, and parsley used in Egyptian meals. Grandpa likes to drink mint tea using the mint he grows in his garden. Grandpa also grows hibiscus and jasmine, which smell lovely. In his garden, there are guava, fig, and olive trees too. Olives take time to grow and are full of oil. Grandpa waters plants, pulls weeds, checks for insects, and uses natural fertilizer. It's hard work, but he really enjoys it.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The general idea of the text is about ".....".
a) Laila's mom b) Laila c) Grandpa's garden d) Grandpa
- The underlined word "incredible" means
a) dry b) wet c) fast d) great

B Answer the following questions:

- What do plants need?
.....
- What does Grandpa like to drink?
.....
- How does Grandpa care for plants?
.....

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

- use – fertilizer – Sometimes – natural – I.
.....
- tea – Dad – morning – drinks – every – mint.
.....
- the plants – do – care – How – you – for?
.....
- water, – care – need – Plants – sunlight, – and.
.....

6 Punctuate the following:

- what kind of plants do you have here
.....
- it sounds like hard work
.....



How's The Weather in Your City? كيف حال الطقس في مدينتك؟



Listen and say:

استمع وقل:

Main vocabulary

weather	الطقس	wet (adj)	مبلل
windy (adj)	عاصف	rainy (adj)	ممطر
warm (adj)	دافئ	sunny (adj)	شمس
different (adj)	مختلف	shade	ظل

Extra vocabulary

clouds	سحاب	strong (adj)	قوى	dark (adj)	مظلم
waves	أمواج	high (adj)	عالي	indoors	في الداخل
early (adj)	مبكر	students	طلاب	outdoors	في الخارج
clear (adj)	صافي / واضح	sunglasses	نظارات شمسية	plants	نباتات

Expressions and Phrases

different from	مختلف عن	protect from	يحمي من
Write back soon.	اكتب مرة أخرى قريباً.	What is the weather like ...?	كيف حال الطقس ...؟

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
change يتغير	changed	stay يبقى	stayed
check يتحقق من	checked	share يشارك	shared

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
drink يشرب	drank	wear يرتدي	wore

What is the weather like in Egypt today? ما هو حال الطقس في مصر اليوم؟



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

يهدف هذا السؤال إلى إعطاء الطالب مساحة للتفكير في موضوع الدرس قبل البدء فيه.



Warm up

How do we check the weather every day?

To : John@yahoo.com

From : youssef@gmail.com

Subject : Weather in Egypt

Hi John,

How are you? I want to tell you about the **weather**⁽¹⁾ in Egypt today. It is very different from one place to another.

In Alexandria, it's windy and rainy. The sky is full of dark clouds and the **waves**⁽²⁾ are high. People are staying **indoors**⁽³⁾ because it's cold and the streets are **wet**⁽⁴⁾. Some shops are closing early.

In Cairo, the weather is warm and sunny. People are walking in the streets. Children are playing in the parks. Some students are doing their homework outdoors. I can see birds flying in the clear sky.

In Aswan, it is hot. The sun is very strong, and the sky is clear. Farmers water their plants early in the morning. People drink lots of water, wear hats and sunglasses, and sit in the **shade**⁽⁵⁾ to **protect**⁽⁶⁾ themselves from the sun.

Now, Egyptians are checking the weather to help people take care of their homes and plants.

What is the weather like in your city? Write back soon.

Your friend,

Youssef

(1)	طقس
(2)	أمواج
(3)	في الداخل
(4)	مبلل
(5)	ظل
(6)	يحمي

Read again and answer: SB

1 What is the weather like in Alexandria according to the text?

2 Why are some students doing their homework outdoors?

3 Why do farmers water plants early in the morning?



The Main Ideas of the Text:

الأفكار الرئيسية في النص:

☺ The weather in Egypt is very different from one place to another.

الطقس في مصر يختلف كثيرًا من مكان لآخر.

☺ In Alexandria, it's windy and rainy.

في الإسكندرية، الجو عاصف وممطر.

☺ People are staying indoors because it's cold and the streets are wet.

الناس يبقون في الداخل لأن الجو بارد والشوارع مبللة.

☺ In Cairo, the weather is warm and sunny.

في القاهرة، الطقس دافئ ومشمس.

☺ In Aswan, it is hot.

في أسوان، الجو حار.

☺ People drink lots of water, wear hats, and sunglasses.

الناس يشربون الكثير من الماء، ويرتدون القبعات والنظارات الشمسية.

☺ They sit in the shade to protect themselves from the sun.

يجلسون في الظل لحماية أنفسهم من الشمس.

☺ Now, weather experts are checking the sky and sharing weather news.

الآن، يقوم خبراء الطقس بالتحقق من السماء ومشاركة أخبار الطقس.



The Present Continuous Tense زمن المضارع المستمر

Usage:

الاستخدام:

نستخدم زمن المضارع المستمر للحديث عن:

Actions happening now or near the moment of speaking.

الأفعال التي تحدث الآن أو بالقرب من لحظة التحدث.

e.g. Ahmed **is playing** football **now**.e.g. We **are visiting** Grandma.

Affirmative Form:

صيغة الإثبات:

Subject الفاعل

Verb to be

I

am

He - She - It

is

(inf.) + ing . الفعل في المصدر

You - We - They

are

e.g. Nada **is practicing** for her competition today.

Negative Form:

صيغة النفي:

Subject الفاعل

Verb to be

I

am not

He - She - It

is not = isn't

(inf.) + ing . الفعل في المصدر

You - We - They

are not = aren't

e.g. They **are not playing** in the garden.

Got it:

I am (**practice**) for the football game **now**.● (now) من الكلمات الدالة على زمن المضارع المستمر وبالتالي يأتي بعد (verb to be) الفعل + (ing) لذلك تكون الإجابة (**practicing**)

Yes/ No Question:

السؤال بنهائي:

Am / Is / Are + subject + (inf.) + ing ...?

e.g. A: **Is** Sara **watching** TV **now**?
B: **Yes**, she **is**.e.g. A: **Are** your cousins **studying** at home?
B: **No**, they **aren't**.

Wh- Question:

السؤال باستخدام كلمة الاستفهام:

Wh- word + am / is / are + subject + (inf.) + ing ...?

e.g. A: What **is** he **doing** **now**?
B: He **is eating** lunch.e.g. A: Where **are** you **playing**?
B: We **are playing** in the park.

**Got it:**

What are you (do) today, Ola?

• (today) من الكلمات الدالة على زمن المضارع المستمر، ومع وجود (are) تكون الإجابة (doing).

**Notes**

• ملاحظات على إضافة الـ (ing) للفعل:

١- إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف (e) فتحذف الـ (e) عند إضافة الـ (ing):

move → moving.

e.g. smile → smiling.

٢- إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف ساكن يسبقه حرف متحرك (vowel + consonant)، نضاعف الحرف الساكن الأخير عند إضافة الـ (ing):

swim → swimming.

e.g. run → running.

٣- إذا انتهى الفعل بـ (ie)، يتم حذفهما وتستبدل بـ (y) عند إضافة الـ (ing):

lie → lying.

e.g. tie → tying.

Key words: الكلمات الدالة:

at the moment في هذه اللحظة – at the present في الوقت الحالي – today اليوم

now الآن – right now الآن – Look! انظروا! – Listen! استمع! – still مازال

this + (time) هذا + (توقيت) – next + (time) القادم – tomorrow غداً

**Checkpoint****1. Choose the correct answer:**

يهدف هذا التدريب إلى قياس مدى فهمك للقواعد اللغوية.

- ① I (is – are – am – do) writing a story about my adventures.
- ② My brother (am – is – are – does) playing video games with his friends.
- ③ Hani and Hana aren't (eat – eats – ate – eating) breakfast now.
- ④ The children are (watch – watching – watches – watched) a funny movie now.
- ⑤ Where (is – are – be – am) they going now?

2. Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- ① Dina and Habiba (be) drawing a beautiful picture.
- ② Nader (not be) going to the park today.
- ③ (Are) Mom listening to music?
- ④ When are you (study) for the test?
- ⑤ What is your friend (buy) now.

Quick Practice on the Present Continuous Tense

1 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 Look! The cat (sleep) on my laptop.
- 2 We (not play) board games right now.
- 3 When is your sister (practice) the piano?
- 4 I (not write) an email to my cousin at the moment.
- 5 Look! Our neighbors are (wash) their car outside.
- 6 My mother (prepared) a special dish for me now.
- 7 Why (be) the kids crying?
- 8 The sun is (shine) brightly today.
- 9 The workers (be paint) our house this week.
- 10 Where are you (go) with that bag?
- 11 She (not do) her homework tomorrow.
- 12 Who is (swim) in the pool? Is that Ahmed or Ashraf?
- 13 (Be) they painting the new house this weekend?
- 14 The phone is (ring). Can you answer it, please?
- 15 The teacher (not explain) a new lesson next week.

2 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

- 1 playing – in – happily – They – the garden – are.
.....
- 2 are – The students – eating – school – lunch – at.
.....
- 3 is – the phone – on – Who – now – talking?
.....
- 4 school – going – Is – brother – to – your?
.....
- 5 week – Where – working – is – this – she?
.....

Practice



Lesson 2

Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 We stayed because it was raining heavily outside.
a) outdoors b) warm c) high d) indoors
- 2 The is hot in the desert.
a) weather b) sea c) rain d) wave
- 3 At night, the sky becomes and the stars appear.
a) dark b) windy c) news d) indoors
- 4 The sun is shining, and the sky is very
a) high b) early c) clear d) rainy
- 5 In winter, we wear jackets to stay
a) clear b) outdoors c) warm d) news
- 6 We watched the weather on TV to know if it would rain.
a) news b) waves c) indoors d) school
- 7 The sea is not safe for swimming now; the are too strong.
a) sunglasses b) waves c) indoors d) news
- 8 The sun will at six a.m.
a) go b) change c) rise d) rest

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

cars – sunglasses – care – checking

In Aswan, it is hot. The sun is very strong, and the sky is clear. Farmers water their plants early in the morning. People drink lots of water, wear hats, and (1)....., and sit in the shade to protect themselves from the sun. Now, weather experts are (2)..... the sky and sharing weather news. Everyone is watching the weather and taking (3)..... of their homes and gardens.

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1 students – at – learning – school – are – The.

2 sitting – in – are – gardens – families – Some.

3 now – Where – they – going – are?

4 weather – The – changing – Egypt – in – is.

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 Hana (take) a photo at the moment.
- 2 We (eat) our lunch now.
- 3 The girls (cycle) in the park tomorrow.
- 4 We (go) to the theater to watch a play this evening.
- 5 Mom (be) baking a chocolate cake.
- 6 Look! The boy is (sleep).
- 7 They (be) coming from school now.
- 8 Are they (watch) a funny movie?
- 9 I (not eat) a cake now. I'm eating biscuits.
- 10 He (does not) playing football today. He's studying.
- 11 (Be) you studying English at the moment?
- 12 Nesma is (wear) a hat. She looks great!
- 13 Where are you (go) next week?
- 14 I (finish) the book tomorrow.
- 15 A: Are you watching TV at the moment? B: No, I (not be).

5 Punctuate the following:

- 1 It's hot in aswan
- 2 how's the weather in your city

6 Write an informal email of (50-60) words to your friend Amira to tell her about the weather in Alexandria. Your name is Eman and your email address is eman@gmail.com. Your friend's email address is amira@gmail.com:

Alexandria – the wind and the waves

New Messages

To:

From:

Subject:

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



Reading



Listen and say:

استمع وقل:

Main vocabulary

flow	يتدفق / يجري	Nile perch	سمك البياض النيلي (نوع من الأسماك)
tilapia	سمك البلطي	crocodiles	تماسيح
kingfishers	طيور الرقراق	herons	طيور مالك الحزين

Extra vocabulary

south	جنوب	north	شمال	ducks	بط
important	مهم	soil	تربة	wheat	قمح
special	خاص / مميز	temples	معابد	jobs	وظائف / أعمال

Expressions and Phrases

very important for	مهم جدًا لـ	depend on	يعتمد على
--------------------	-------------	-----------	-----------

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present

Past

Present

Past

flow يتدفق / يجري

flowed

flood

يفيض / يغمر

flooded

provide يوفر / يزود

provided

depend

يعتمد

depended

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present

Past

Present

Past

bring يَحْضِرُ / يُجْلِبُ

brought

build

يَبْنِي

built

grow ينمو / يزرع

grew

think

يعتقد / يظن

thought

The wonderful Nile River

نهر النيل الرائع



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:



Warm up

What do you know about the Nile River?

يهدف هذا السؤال إلى إعطاء الطالب مساحة للتفكير في موضوع الدرس قبل البدء فيه.

The Nile is the longest river in the world.

It is about 6,650 kilometers long.

The Nile **flows**⁽¹⁾ through Egypt from **south**⁽²⁾ to **north**⁽³⁾. It goes through the desert and brings life to the country.

Many animals live in and near the Nile. Big fish like **Nile perch**⁽⁴⁾ and **tilapia**⁽⁵⁾ swim in the water. **Crocodiles**⁽⁶⁾ live in the river too. They are dangerous animals. Many birds come to the river to drink and find food. You can see **kingfishers**⁽⁷⁾, **herons**⁽⁸⁾, and ducks near the Nile.

The Nile is very important for Egyptian people. In the past, the river **flooded**⁽⁹⁾ and brought good **soil**⁽¹⁰⁾. Farmers used this soil to grow food like wheat and vegetables. The Nile provides people and animals with water to drink. People also use the river to travel in boats.

The Ancient Egyptians thought the Nile was **special**⁽¹¹⁾. They built **temples**⁽¹²⁾ near the river. Today, many people still **depend on**⁽¹³⁾ the Nile for their jobs and food.



- | | |
|------|-------------------|
| (1) | يتدفق |
| (2) | جنوب |
| (3) | شمال |
| (4) | سمك البياض النيلي |
| (5) | سمك البلطي |
| (6) | تماسيح |
| (7) | طيور الرفراف |
| (8) | طائر مالك الحزين |
| (9) | أفاض |
| (10) | تربة |
| (11) | مميز |
| (12) | معابد |
| (13) | يعتمد على |



Answer the following questions: SB

- How long is the Nile River?
- Name two fish that live in the Nile.
- Why is the Nile important for farmers?
- What bird can you see near the Nile?



The Main Ideas of the Text:

الأفكار الرئيسية في النص:

- ✓ The Nile is the longest river in the world. النيل هو أطول نهر في العالم.
- ✓ The Nile flows through Egypt from south to north. يتدفق نهر النيل عبر مصر من الجنوب إلى الشمال.
- ✓ Many animals live in and near the Nile. تعيش العديد من الحيوانات بالقرب من النيل.
- ✓ The Nile is very important for Egyptian people. النيل مهم جدًا للشعب المصري.
- ✓ In the past, the river flooded and brought good soil. في الماضي، فاض النهر وجلب تربة جيدة.
- ✓ Today, many people still depend on the Nile for their jobs and food. اليوم، لا يزال العديد من الناس يعتمدون على النيل في وظائفهم وطعامهم.

B

Pronunciation



Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر، وقل:

Pronounce the /e/ sound by opening your mouth slightly and keeping your tongue low-mid and front. This vowel sound is heard in words like "ten" /ten/, "hen" /hen/, and "bed" /bed/.

ينطق الصوت /e/ عن طريق فتح الفم قليلاً وإبقاء اللسان في وضع منخفض-متوسط وإلى الأمام. يُسمع هذا الصوت في كلمات مثل "ten" /ten/, "hen" /hen/, and "bed" /bed/.

/e/

أمثلة لصوت الـ



hen	دجاجة	desk	مكتب
net	شبكة	present	هدية
fence	سور	bed	سرير
red	أحمر	clever	ذكي / ماهر
shelf	رف	ten	عشرة

Pronounce the short "I" sound

Keep your tongue high but slightly lower than for /I/, with relaxed lips and jaw. The tongue tip rests just behind the bottom front teeth like in the words (sit, bit, in)

انطق صوت "i"، القصير اجعل لسانك مرتفعاً، ولكن أقل انخفاضاً قليلاً مما هو عليه في صوت /i:/، مع شفاة وفك مسترخيين. طرف اللسان يستقر خلف الأسنان الأمامية السفلية تماماً كما في الكلمات (sit, bit, in).

/i/

أمثلة لصوت الـ



pin	دبوس	pick	يلتقط
hill	تل	window	شباك
mint	نعناع	insect	حشرة
swim	يسبح	village	قرية
milk	لبن	gift	هدية



Read the sentences and write the correct sound of the word in bold: SB

- 1 Sea turtles **swim** in the warm Red Sea.
- 2 The ibis eats small animals like **insects** and fish.
- 3 Grandpa grows herbs like **mint** and parsley.
- 4 Hibiscus flowers grow near the **fence**.

Practice



Lesson 3

Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Water through the Nile and helps many people.
a) flows b) brings c) provides d) grow
- 2 The Nile life to the land around it.
a) brings b) thought c) built d) travel
- 3 is a large fish that lives in the Nile.
a) Nile perch b) Kingfishers c) Crocodiles d) Ducks
- 4 are dangerous animals that live in the Nile.
a) Crocodiles b) Ducks c) Herons d) Jobs
- 5 fly over the river looking for fish.
a) Kingfishers b) Wheat c) Boats d) Temples
- 6 In the past, the Nile often the land.
a) flooded b) thought c) brought d) followed
- 7 Farmers food near the river.
a) grow b) bring c) build d) depend
- 8 The Nile clean water for people.
a) provides b) depends c) builds d) grows
- 9 The river helps many people find
a) jobs b) boats c) deserts d) temples
- 10 People grow like onions and tomatoes.
a) vegetables b) crocodiles c) birds d) temples

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: SB

temples – trees – life – provides

The Nile is the world's longest river, 6,650 km long. It flows through Egypt, bringing (1)..... . Many animals, like fish and crocodiles, live there. The Nile is very important for people. In the past, the river flooded, bringing good soil for farmers to grow food. Today, it (2)..... water for people and animals. It supports jobs and food. Ancient Egyptians thought the Nile was special; they built (3)..... near it.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

The Nile, the world's longest river (6,650 km), flows through Egypt from south to north, bringing life. Many animals live there: Nile perch, tilapia, crocodiles, kingfishers, herons, and ducks. It is important for Egyptians. In the past, the river flooded, bringing good soil. Farmers used this to grow wheat and vegetables. Today, the Nile provides water for people and animals. People use the river to travel in boats. Ancient Egyptians thought the Nile was special; they built temples. Many people still depend on Nile for jobs and food.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The Nile River is long.
a) 3,500 km b) 5,000 km c) 6,650 km d) 7,200 km
- The underlined pronoun "It" refers to
a) the crocodile b) the Nile River
c) the kingfisher d) the soil

B Answer the following questions:

- Why is the Nile important for farmers?
- How do people travel in the river?
- Summarize the text in two sentences.

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

- live – the – animals – Many – Nile – in.
.....
- drink – water – to – with – The Nile – people – provides.
.....
- built – They – near – temples – the Nile.
.....
- crops – grow – vegetables – wheat – and – Farmers – like.
.....

5 Punctuate the following:

- Where does the crocodile live in egypt
.....
- animals need food and water to survive
.....



Listen and say:

استمع وقل:

Main vocabulary

sand dunes	كثبان رملية	guide	مرشد / دليل	rare (adj.)	نادر
bench	مقعد	tucked (adj.)	مخبأ	skeleton	هيكل عظمي
fossil	أحفورة	exhibit	معرض	history	تاريخ
Places:				الأماكن	
Wadi El Rayan National Park	محمية وادي الريان الوطنية	Wadi El-Hitan	وادي الحيتان		

Extra vocabulary

camels	جمال	waterfalls	شلالات	palm trees	أشجار النخيل
rare	نادر	camera	كاميرا	whales	حيتان

Expressions and Phrases

organize a trip	ينظم رحلة	on the way	في الطريق	in the distance	في الأفق (من بعيد)
with no luck	يجري عبر	(be) covered by	مُغطى بـ	full of	ملء بـ

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
organize	ينظم	organized	يشرح
arrive	يصل	arrived	يُرى / يعرض
		explain	showed
		show	
Irregular verbs			
أفعال غير منتظمة			
Present	Past	Present	Past
leave	يغادر	left	يركب / يقود
		ride	rode



Unforgettable Trip to Wadi El Rayan

رحلة لا تُنسى إلى وادي الريان



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

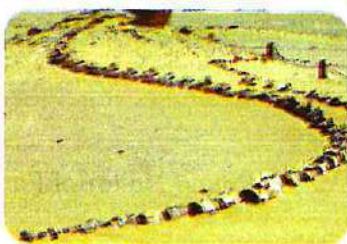


Warm up

Have you ever been on a school trip? What did you do?

يهدف هذا السؤال إلى إعطاء الطالب مساحة للتفكير في موضوع الدرس قبل البدء فيه.

Last Thursday, our school organized a trip to Wadi El Rayan National Park in Fayoum. Our class teacher, Miss Salma, and science teacher, Mr. Ahmed, came with us. We left school early and rode the bus for two hours. On the way, we saw green farms, sand dunes, and camels⁽¹⁾ walking in the distance. When we arrived, a kind guide⁽²⁾ named Mr. Tarek showed us the lakes, the waterfalls⁽³⁾, and the palm trees. He explained that Wadi El Rayan is not only beautiful, but it also protects rare⁽⁴⁾ animals and plants.



After lunch, we took another short trip into the desert to a place called Wadi El-Hitan, or Valley of the Whales⁽⁵⁾. This place was covered by sea. Scientists found the skeletons⁽⁶⁾ of ancient whales there. We saw real whale bones in the sand and even a fossil museum⁽⁷⁾!

I wanted to take a picture of the skeletons with my camera⁽⁸⁾ when I realized that it wasn't with me. I looked everywhere with no luck. Thankfully, Mr. Ahmed found it tucked⁽⁹⁾ under a wooden bench⁽¹⁰⁾ outside the exhibit⁽¹¹⁾ just before we left that area.

That trip was full of nature, history⁽¹²⁾, and fun with friends.

- | | |
|------|---------------|
| (1) | جمال |
| (2) | مرشد |
| (3) | شلالات |
| (4) | نادر |
| (5) | وادي الحيتان |
| (6) | هياكل عظمية |
| (7) | متحف الحفريات |
| (8) | كاميرا |
| (9) | مُخبأ |
| (10) | مقعد خشبي |
| (11) | معرض |
| (12) | تاريخ |



Read again and answer: SB

- Where did the students go on their school trip?
- What animals did the students see near the lake?

The Main Ideas of the Text:

الأفكار الرئيسية في النص:

- ✓ Our school organized a trip to Wadi El Rayan National Park in Fayoum.
نظمت مدرستنا رحلة إلى وادي الريان في الفيوم.
- ✓ We saw green farms, sand dunes, and camels walking in the distance.
رأينا مزارع خضراء، وكثبانًا رملية، وجمالًا تسير في المسافة.
- ✓ Wadi El Rayan is not only beautiful, but it also protects rare animals and plants.
وادي الريان ليس جميلًا فقط، بل يحمي أيضًا الحيوانات والنباتات النادرة.
- ✓ Scientists found the skeletons of ancient whales there.
وجد العلماء هياكل عظمية لحيتان قديمة هناك.
- ✓ That trip was full of nature, history, and fun with friends.
كانت تلك الرحلة مليئة بالطبيعة والتاريخ والمرح مع الأصدقاء.



Tip!

Skimming a text means reading quickly to get the main idea. Focus on the most important parts to understand what the text is mostly about.

قراءة النص بسرعة تعني قراءة سريعة لفهم الفكرة الرئيسية. ركّز على الأجزاء الأكثر أهمية لفهم محتوى النص.

✓ Checkpoint Choose the correct answer:

يهدف هذا التدريب إلى قياس مدى فهمك للمفردات اللغوية.

- ① The children sat on the wooden (skeleton – bench – guide – dune) to eat lunch.
- ② A (fossil – bench – guide – whale) showed us around the national park.
- ③ The scientist found a dinosaur (palm tree – skeleton – history – camera) in the exhibit.
- ④ It is very (usual – common – rare – early) to see snow in Egypt.
- ⑤ The desert is full of soft (palm trees – waterfalls – sand dunes – benches) that move with the wind.
- ⑥ The (camels – fossils – rivers – birds) in Wadi El-Hitan are millions of years old.

**Tip!**

Here are some steps for writing a story:

فيما يلي بعض الخطوات لكتابة قصة:

Tell **when** and **where** the story takes place.

أخبر متى وأين تحدث القصة.

e.g. Last Thursday, our school organized a trip to **Wadi El Rayan National Park in Fayoum**.

Say who is in the story (**people, animals, etc.**).

أخبرنا من هو الموجود في القصة (أشخاص، حيوانات... إلخ).

e.g. Our class teacher, **Miss Salma**, and science teacher, **Mr. Ahmed**, came with us.

Include a **problem** and a **solution**.

تضمن المشكلة والحل.

e.g. Sand got into my sandwich, and we had to move behind some rocks.

Use the **past simple tense**.

استخدم زمن الماضي البسيط.

e.g. On the way, we **saw** green farms, ...

e.g. After lunch, we **took** another short trip ...

Add **interesting details**.

أضف تفاصيل شيقة.

e.g. Before we left, I **picked up a small rock and kept it in my notebook**.

Finish with **an ending**.

إنه بخاتمة.

e.g. That trip was full of nature, history, and fun with friends.



Think and Create

My Egyptian Wildlife Snapshot

لقطة من الحياة البرية المصرية

Choose one animal or plant from Egypt and make a small fact card about it.

اختر حيوانًا أو نباتًا واحدًا من مصر وقم بإعداد بطاقة حقائق صغيرة عنه.

Steps:

Choose **one animal** (like a camel, Nile crocodile).

اختر حيوانًا واحدًا (مثل الجمل، تمساح النيل).

Find or Draw a Picture: You can **draw** the animal or plant, **print a photo**, or **cut** one from a magazine.

ابحث عن صورة أو ارسمها: يمكنك رسم الحيوان أو النبات، أو طباعة صورة، أو قص واحدة من مجلة.



2

Write 3 easy Facts:

Where does it live? (Desert, sea, river, etc.)What's the **weather** like there? (Hot, dry, sunny, etc.)What's **one special thing** about it? (What does it eat?)

Is it dangerous or not?)

اكتب ثلاث حقائق سهلة/بسيطة:

أين يعيش؟ (صحراء، بحر، نهر... إلخ.)

كيف هو الطقس هناك؟ (حار، جاف، مشمس... إلخ.)

ما هو الشيء المميز فيه؟ (ماذا يأكل؟ هل هو خطير أم لا؟)



3



Make your card and color it.

اصنع بطاقتك الخاصة وقم بتلوينها.

Share with the class.

شارك مع الفصل.



5

Practice



Lessons 4 and 5

Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Ali wants to be a nature.....
a) doctor b) park c) creature d) guide
- 2 It's to find snow in Egypt.
a) often b) usual c) easy d) rare
- 3 Scientists study to learn about the past.
a) dunes b) fossils c) wildlife d) waterfalls
- 4 The has long legs and a beak.
a) heron b) whale c) camel d) fennec fox
- 5 We saw a dinosaur at the museum.
a) snack b) dune c) skeleton d) beak
- 6 Scientists found ancient bones in Wadi El-Hitan.
a) whales b) lakes c) palm trees d) benches
- 7 fall from high rocks.
a) Lakes b) Palm trees
c) Waterfalls d) National Parks
- 8 Mr. Ahmed the camera under the wooden bench.
a) looked b) explained c) found d) protected

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: **SB**

skeletons – waterfalls – heron – rock

Last Thursday, our class went on a school trip to Wadi El Rayan in Fayoum. We saw lakes, (1)....., and desert animals like a fennec fox and a white (2)..... Later, we visited Wadi El-Hitan, the Valley of the Whales, and saw ancient whale (3)..... in the sand. I was surprised to know that whales once lived there.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

Last Thursday, our school organized a trip to Wadi El Rayan National Park in Fayoum. I packed snacks, water, a notebook, and my camera. We left early, and rode the bus for two hours. We saw green farms, sand dunes, and camels. Mr. Tarek, a kind guide, greeted us. He showed us the lakes, waterfalls, and palm trees. He explained that Wadi El Rayan protects rare animals and plants. We saw a fennec fox and a white heron. After lunch, we went to Wadi El-Hitan, Valley of the Whales. Scientists found ancient whale skeletons there. We saw real whale bones and a fossil museum. I was amazed!

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Mr. Tarek is a kind
 a) student b) scientist c) teacher d) guide
- 2 The underlined word "rare" means
 a) a lot b) many c) much d) very few

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 What did the writer pack for the trip?
- 4 What did the writer see along the road from the bus?
- 5 Summarize the text in two sentences.

4 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

- 1 distance – saw – We – walking – the – in – camels.

- 2 found – Scientists – ancient – of – whales – skeletons.

- 3 trip – full – is – nature – The – of.

- 4 and – animals – rare – Wadi El Rayan – plants – protects.

5 Punctuate the following:

- 1 We took a short trip to wadi El-hitan

- 2 what's the weather like

6 Write a text of (50 - 60) words using the following guiding elements:

"Visiting a new place"

I went to ... – I went with ... – I went on ...



Unit 2

REVIEW



يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من مراجعة أهم الأجزاء التي وردت بالوحدة.

Lesson (1)

natural	سماد طبيعي	weeds	الأعشاب الضارة
fertilizer			
water	يروي / يسقي	plant	يُزرع
pull out	يسحب / يشد	parsley	بقدونس
basil	ريحان	mint	نعناع
hibiscus	الكركديه	jasmine	الياسمين
care	رعاية / عناية	flavor	نكهة
shade	ظل	oil	زيت

Lesson (2)

weather	الطقس	sunglasses	نظارات شمسية
wet	مبلل	experts	خبراء
expert	خبير	indoors	في الداخل
waves	أمواج	grow	يُزرع / ينمو
soil	تربة زراعية	dry	جاف
windy	عاصف	windy	عاصف
shade	ظل	warm	دافئ

Lesson (3)

flow	يتدفق / يجري	ducks	بط
Nile perch	سمك البياض النيلي (نوع من الأسماك)	important	مهم
tilapia	سمك البلطي	soil	تربة
Crocodiles	تماسيح	wheat	قمح
kingfishers	طيور الرفراف	special	خاص / مميز
herons	طيور مالك الحزين	temples	معابد
depend on	يعتمدون على	jobs	وظائف / أعمال

Lessons (4 and 5)

sand dunes	كثبان رملية	guide	مرشد / دليل
fossil museum	متحف الحفريات	camera	كاميرا
rare (adj.)	نادر	palm trees	أشجار النخيل
skeleton	هيكل عظمي	whales	حيتان
history	تاريخ	bones	عظام
lakes	بحيرات	waterfalls	شلالات

Language in Use

• The Present Continuous Tense:

Form

Affirmative Form

Subject + am/ is/ are + (inf. + ing).
e.g. The **are** organizing a party this week.

Negative Form

Subject + am/ is/ are + not (nf. + ing).
e.g. Amr **isn't** playing football.

Yes/No Question

Am/ Is/ Are + subject + (nf. + ing)?
e.g. **Are** they staying in France?

• Wh- Question:

Wh- word + am/ is/ are + subject + (inf. + ing)...?

e.g. A: Where **are** you playing?

B: We're **playing** in the park.

Unit 2

CHECK YOUR VOCABULARY



تأكد من حفظك لكلمات الدروس قبل البدء في إجابة اختبار الوحدة.

Lesson 1

الكلمة بالعربية	الكلمة بالإنجليزية
natural fertilizer	يسحب / يشد
weeds	نعناع
basil	بقدونس
hibiscus	الياسمين
flavor	ظل

Lesson 2

weather	دافئ
change	عال
experts	مبكر
wave	صاف/واضح
dry	مبلل

Lesson 3

Nile perch	معابد
kingfishers	قمح
herons	خاص / مميز
depend on	مهم
tilapia	يتدفق

Lessons 4 and 5

sand dunes	هيكل عظمي
guide	مقعد
rare	متحف الحفريات
valley	معرض
waterfalls	بحيرات

يهدف هذا التدريب الى قياس مدى حفظ الطالب لتصريفات الأفعال.

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Present

care

relax

Past

organised

carried

rode

Present

grow

check

Past

changed

kept

fell

”لتسميع كلمات أكثر خاصة بهذه الوحدة .. اذهب إلى كراسة التسميع آخر الكتاب“.



لكن تتمكن من كتابة الموضوعات بشكل مميز، اتبع هذه الخطوات.

How to write about Your school trip:

- o Our school organized a trip to + اسم المكان
- o We saw + أشياء رأيتها في المكان
- o A guide show us + الكائنات والأماكن التي رأيتوها
- o Later, we + آخر شيء فعلته هناك قبل الرجوع

"Our school trip"

Last Thursday, our school organized a trip to Wadi El Rayan National Park. We saw sand dunes, camels, lakes, waterfalls, and palm trees. A guide showed us rare animals and plants. Later, we visited Wadi El-Hitan, saw whale skeletons, a fossil museum, and ended with history, fun, and nature.

How to write a narrative story about the weather in Egypt:

- o The weather in Egypt is + وصف الطقس بشكل عام
- o In اسم مدينة , it's وصف الجو
- o People + ماذا يفعل الناس في هذا الجو

The weather in Egypt

The weather in Egypt today is different in each place. In Alexandria, it's windy, rainy, and cold with high waves, so people stay indoors. In Cairo, it's warm and sunny. Children play and students study outdoors. In Aswan, it's hot. People wear sunglasses, drink water, and sit in the shade.

1 Read and complete using the word in the box:

shade – oil – grow – herbs – water

- 1 Since ancient time, people used olives to make
- 2 My brother and I have a plant, we it every day.
- 3 In Egypt, people use like basil in cooking.
- 4 We sit under trees to rest in the
- 5 Farmers fruits like guavas and figs.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 When it's hot, people drink water and rest in the
a) shade b) street c) heat d) dust
- 2 The streets are because it is raining heavily.
a) dry b) wet c) dusty d) hot
- 3 We wear hats to ourselves from the sun.
a) heat b) clean c) grow d) protect
- 4 Some people like to check the before they go outdoors to know if it's hot or cold.
a) shops b) beach c) plants d) weather

3 Read and write the sentences using the correct form of the word(s) in brackets:

- 1 Maged (play) tennis in the club now.
- 2 you (eat) your lunch at the moment?
- 3 I (not wear) my jacket today. It's hot.
- 4 My friend and I (visit) London next weekend.

4 Look, choose, and complete using the words in the box:

waterfalls – ancient – celebrate – trip – history

Last Thursday, our class went on a school ⁽¹⁾ to Wadi El Rayan in Fayoum. We saw lakes, ⁽²⁾, and desert animals. Later, we visited Wadi El-Hitan, the Valley of the Whales, and saw ⁽³⁾ whale skeletons in the sand. I was surprised to know that whales once lived there! The trip was full of learning and fun, and ⁽⁴⁾





Listening

4

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The Nile is the river in the world.
a) shortest b) smallest c) longest d) driest
- 2 The Nile flows through Egypt from to north.
a) east b) south c) west d) center
- 3 In the past, the Nile flooded and brought good
a) water b) animals c) boats d) soil
- 4 Ancient Egyptians built near the Nile.
a) houses b) schools c) temples d) bridges



Reading

1.5

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 We sit under trees to rest in the
a) shine b) sun c) balcony d) shade
- 2 They built a small museum to old animal skeletons.
a) organize b) see c) protect d) realize
- 3 The tour told us many facts about the ancient site.
a) camera b) picture c) guide d) skeleton

1.5

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

skeletons – food – Valley – museum

After lunch, we took another short trip into the desert to a place called Wadi El-Hitan, or (1)..... of the Whales. This place was covered by sea. Scientists found the skeletons of ancient whales there. We saw real whale bones in the sand and even a fossil (2).....! I wanted to take a picture of the (3)..... with my camera when I realized that it wasn't with me.

7

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

The weather is changing, and it's very different from one city to another in Egypt. In Alexandria, the wind is blowing, light rain is falling, and waves are crashing on the beach. People are staying indoors because it's cold and windy. In Cairo, the sun is shining, and children are playing in parks. Families are sitting in gardens, and students are doing homework outside. In Aswan, the temperature is rising, the sky is clear, and the sun is very strong. Farmers are watering plants early. Weather experts are studying the sky and sending updates. Everyone is watching the weather and staying safe.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The general idea of the text is about
a) animals b) cities c) weather d) countries
- 2 In Aswan, the is rising, and the sky is clear.
a) kites b) temperature c) marks d) grades

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 Why are people staying indoors?
- 4 How is the weather in Cairo?
- 5 What are weather experts doing?



Writing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1

1 are – What – doing – now – you – right?
.....

2 on – long – The ibis – tufts – its ears – black – has.
.....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

4

1 She's (study) for her exams this week.

2 I (not go) home now.

7 Punctuate the following:

4

1 can I travel next weekend
.....

2 the weather in Egypt is changing
.....

8 Write a text of (50 - 60) words using the following guiding elements:

7

"A trip to Wadi El Rayan"

I packed ... – rode the bus – we saw ...
.....
.....
.....
.....





Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4

- 1 I wanted to take a picture of the
a) mountains b) skeletons c) fish d) pyramids
- 2 Mr. Ahmed found my
a) camera b) phone c) bag d) book
- 3 My camera was under a wooden
a) bed b) chair c) table d) bench
- 4 That trip was full of
a) cameras b) water c) nature d) money



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1.5

- 1 In Egypt, people use like basil in cooking. **SB**
a) fruits b) herbs c) vegetables d) sweets
- 2 "....." are dangerous animals.
a) Camels b) Crocodiles c) kingfishers d) herons
- 3 We stayed indoors because it's
a) cool b) heat c) health d) rainy

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

1.5

high – wet – windy – snow

The weather is very different from one city to another. In Alexandria, It's (1)....., and light rain is falling. The waves are (2)..... on the beach, and the sky is full of clouds. People are staying indoors because it's cold and windy. Some streets are (3)....., and cars are moving slowly. Shops are closing early because not many people are going outside.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: **SB**

7

The Nile is the longest river in the world. It is 6,650 kilometers long and flows through Egypt from south to north. It goes through the desert and brings life. Many animals live in and near the Nile, like Nile perch, tilapia, crocodiles, kingfishers, herons, and ducks. The Nile is important for Egyptian people. In the past, it flooded and brought good soil. Farmers used it to grow wheat and vegetables. It provides water to drink and is used to travel in boats. Ancient Egyptians thought it was special and built temples. Today, people still depend on the Nile for jobs and food.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The Nile is the longest in the world.
a) lake b) forest c) river d) mountain
- 2 People depend on the Nile for and food.
a) desert b) jobs c) whales d) temples

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 How long is the Nile River?
- 4 Where does the Nile River flow?
- 5 What crops do the farmers use the Nile to grow?



Writing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1

- 1 ancient – Scientists – whales – of – the skeleton – found.

- 2 went – They – school – on – trip – a.

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

4

- 1 She's (do) her homework now.
- 2 The boys (play) football at the moment.

7 Punctuate the following:

4

- 1 ola is watching a football match now
- 2 where does the camel live

8 Write a text of (50 - 60) words using the following guiding elements:

7

"The weather in Aswan"

much hotter – resting in the shade – wearing sunglasses



A. Language Functions

1 Read and complete the dialog:

plants – care – Egyptian – healthy – mint

Laila : How do you keep your garden so green and (1) _____?

Grandpa : I take care of it every day. Plants need water, sunlight, and (2) _____ to grow well.

Laila : What kinds of (3) _____ do you have here?

Grandpa : I grow herbs like basil, (4) _____, and parsley.

Laila : Great! I think we use them in many (5) _____ meals.

B. Vocabulary and Structures

2 Circle the odd one out and replace it with the correct word:

- | | | | | | |
|---|-----------|--------|----------|---------|-------|
| 1 | waves | tasty | wind | rain | ..... |
| 2 | banana | basil | hibiscus | parsley | ..... |
| 3 | iliapia | check | relax | grow | ..... |
| 4 | windy | warm | indoors | dry | ..... |
| 5 | crocodile | turtle | camel | mint | ..... |

3 Choose the correct answer:

- Sara (isn't – doesn't – aren't) reading a book now.
- We are (study – studies – studying) English at the moment.
- What (am – is – are) they eating?
- Is (you – he – they) playing football?
- Where (is – do – are) Mona and Nada going?
- People use the river to travel in (planes – cars – boats – trains).
- We should stop (pollution – wisdom – trips) to save wildlife.
- There are (rivers – sand dunes – farms – seas) in the desert.
- She (watered – pulled out – planted) the weeds around the flowers.
- Chocolate has a sweet (shape – color – flavor). It tastes lovely.

C. Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Last Thursday, our school took a trip to Wadi El Rayan National Park in Fayoum. I sat with my friends Mariam and Omar on the bus. We saw farms, dunes, and camels on the way. A guide, Mr. Tarek, showed us lakes, waterfalls, and palm trees. We saw a fennec fox and a white heron. Later, we visited Wadi El-Hitan and saw ancient whale skeletons and a fossil museum. The wind blew during lunch, and we moved behind rocks. I took a small rock and kept it in my notebook. The trip was full of nature, history, and fun with friends.

A Answer the following questions:

- When did the students go to Wadi El Rayan National Park?
- Who was their guide?
- What did they see at Wadi El-Hitan?

B Choose the correct answer:

- The (sun – wind – cloud) blew during lunch.
- The trip was full of nature, (sports – action – history), and fun with friends.

D. Writing

5 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

- pull – weeds – out – I – check – and – for insects.
- We – drink – make – to – hibiscus – use – a.
- ancient – bones – Scientists – found – the desert – in.
- the streets – in – are – People – walking – today.
- painting – picture – He – animals – of – a – is.

6 Write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences using the following guiding elements:

"The weather in Cairo"

the sun is shining – children are playing – doing homework outside – sitting in gardens – birds flying

Unit 1

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 We use to have light at night.
a) the sun b) tables c) lamps d) bracelets
- 2 The smell of bread is amazing.
a) baking b) buying c) taking d) eating
- 3 Carpenters make in Damietta. SB
a) sounds b) food c) furniture d) noise
- 4 The place is very I like it.
a) noisy b) dangerous c) peaceful d) dark
- 5 We can swim, and dive in the sea.
a) sleep b) eat c) snorkel d) talk
- 6 We learn about numbers at class.
a) English b) religion c) social studies d) math
- 7 To is to travel or go somewhere with somebody or something.
a) leave b) accompany c) dye d) harvest
- 8 I always care of my little sister.
a) take b) make c) bake d) do
- 9 I can play with friends at class.
a) religion b) Arabic c) P.E. d) science
- 10 "....." means to change the color of cloth, especially by using a special liquid.
a) Paint b) Spin c) Dye d) Stare

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

A

support – together – boats – cars

My name is Omar. I live in Shakhlouba in Kafr El-Sheikh near Lake Manzala. People fish using small wooden (1)..... I help my uncle clean the fishing nets. Some women also help catch fish. In the evening, we sit (2)..... and drink hot tea outside. My village shows how people in Egypt live, work, and (3)..... their families every day.

B

mountains – turtles – landscapes – trees

The nature in Ras Mohamed National Park is amazing. The park is home to many kinds of animals and plants. You can see sea (1)....., dolphins, and many types of birds. There are also mountains and mangrove (2)..... near the beach. Ras Mohamed is a great place for anyone who loves the sea, animals, and peaceful (3).....

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

- 1 Bedouins – live – the – near – Local – park.
- 2 is – famous – a – Ras Mohamed – Park – National.
- 3 furniture – Workers – hand – make – by.
- 4 through – walk – old – We – streets – the.
- 5 animals – harvest – feed – crops – and – They.

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) in the brackets:

- 1 She(drives) to work every day.
- 2 Why(is) he spend so much time on homework?
- 3 We(not raise) chickens at home.
- 4 When do they(leaves) home?
- 5 Omar(not hangs) out after school.
- 6 I always(keeps) my room clean.
- 7 Ali and Hany(doesn't) work on Fridays.
- 8 Nubians(building) their houses from mud bricks.
- 9 She often(read) a book before bed.
- 10(Are) they laugh during the lesson?

Unit 2

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Farmers use natural to help plants grow.
a) weeds b) habitats c) fertilizers d) herbs
- 2 Farmers know that are bad for plants.
a) oil b) weeds c) water d) sunlight
- 3 I prefer eating pizza with fresh because it tastes better.
a) air b) basil c) hibiscus d) tea
- 4 My favorite ice cream are chocolate and mango.
a) weeds b) flavors c) fossils d) olives
- 5 Not all plants can grow well in the Some need the sunlight.
a) wind b) dust c) weather d) shade
- 6 Lots of like basil and mint smell nice and taste delicious.
a) herbs b) plants c) insects d) weeds
- 7 My sister likes eating fish like
a) herons b) tilapia c) crocodiles d) kingfishers
- 8 Weather experts are checking the sky and sharing news.
a) weather b) food c) desert d) shops
- 9 I must the weeds before planting new flowers.
a) check out b) pull out c) lay d) celebrate
- 10 We should for animals and protect nature.
a) move b) check c) look d) care

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

A

waterfalls – guide – doctor – camels

On the way to Wadi El Rayan National Park in Fayoum, we saw green farms, sand dunes, and (1)..... walking in the distance. When we arrived, a kind (2)..... named Mr. Ahmed showed us the lakes, the (3)....., and the palm trees. He explained that Wadi El Rayan is not only beautiful, but it also protects rare animals and plants.

B

wheat – soil – travel – make

The Nile is very important for Egyptian people. In the past, the river flooded and brought good (1)..... . Farmers used this soil to grow food like (2)..... and vegetables. The Nile provides people and animals with water to drink. People also use the river to (3)..... in boats.

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1 animals – the Nile – near – and – in – live – Many.

2 trip – of – nature – was – That – full.

3 TV – isn't – now – Hala – watching.

4 are – doing – at – What – the – you – moment?

5 shows – Pyramids – A tour – us – guide – the.

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) in the brackets:

1 The sun (shine) brightly today.

2 I (close) the window because it's windy.

3 She (not study) for the test. She is watching TV.

4 Are the butterflies (fly) over the garden?

5 Why (do) they not studying for the next exam?

6 We (celebrate) my brother's birthday tonight.

7 (Do) your cousins visiting you this weekend?

8 He (water) the herbs in the garden now.

9 The children are (rest) after playing football.

10 (They are) protecting the animals?

Model 7

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Farmers depended on the Nile's for rich, fertile soil.
a) fish b) flood c) sand dunes d) breeze
- are very large animals that live in the ocean المحيط and breathe air.
a) Fish b) Birds c) Walls d) Whales
- I out the weeds from the garden every morning.
a) pull out b) check out c) brush out d) pass out
- Parents have many, such as taking care of their children.
a) responsibilities b) temples c) vacations d) vegetables
- Before class, students stand and the flag every day.
a) salute b) hang c) pack d) take

2 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

- pack - I - my - schoolbag - at - night.
.....
- Alexandria - windy - It's - and - in - rainy.
.....
- longest - Nile - The - is - the - river.
.....
- farmers - the - The - crops - harvest.
.....
- singing - anthem - the - Students - are - national.
.....

3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- She (take) out books to read at home. This is her habit.
- What plants are you (grew) now?
- (They eat) together for dinner on the weekends?

- 4 The sun (shine) right now.
- 5 My uncle's plane (arriving) at 2:30 a.m. next Monday.
- 6 He (not write) a story about ancient Egypt at present.

Model 2

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 We sat under the tree to rest in the
 a) heat b) wind c) light d) shade
- 2 The tourists followed their to learn about the ancient city.
 a) farmer b) doctor c) guide d) teacher
- 3 I usually eat a when I'm hungry.
 a) snake b) snack c) break d) flag
- 4 The children stayed inside because the weather was too
 a) cloudy b) windy c) warm d) quiet
- 5 The water in the river.
 a) flows b) walks c) flies d) sleeps

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

line – eat – drink – tricky

School begins at 7:30. We start the day outside by standing in (1).....
 We have subjects like math, English, and science. Some topics are a bit (2).....,
 but I try my best. At around 10:15, we have a short break. I usually (3).....
 a snack, play with my friends, chat, and laugh.

3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 She (sit) under the tree and reading a book.
- 2 I always (taking) care of plants.
- 3 (Is) the sun rise at 5:30 a.m.?
- 4 Her birthday (be) on Friday next week.
- 5 Two ibises (flies) over the lake now.



1 Read and complete the dialog:

near – beautiful – flows – river – crocodiles

Ali: Do you like the Nile?

Omar: Yes, it's (1)..... .

Ali: It's the longest (2)..... in the world.

Omar: I know! It (3)..... through Egypt.

Ali: Are there any animals live (4)..... it?

Omar: Yes, like (5)..... and birds.

2 Read and circle the odd one out and replace it with the correct word:

1	chat	put	do	national	.....
2	grow	provide	bring	river	.....
3	water	herb	check	pull	.....
4	ancient	job	dangerous	special	.....
5	covered	rode	explained	realized	.....
6	rise	work	anthem	respect	.....
7	studies	play	find	eat	.....

3 Choose the correct answer:

- Salma her grandparents every weekend.
a) visits b) is visiting c) visit d) visited
- We the national anthem every day at school.
a) chat b) sing c) laugh d) study
- We TV at the moment — it's too early.
a) not watch b) isn't watching c) are not watching d) doesn't watch
- We took photos and watched birds like the near the lake.
a) whale b) turtle c) crocodile d) heron
- The school day at 8:00 and ends at 2:30.
a) starts b) is starting c) start d) started



MODULE 2

Unit 3: Community Builders

Unit 4: Resources Around Us

Unit

3

Community Builders

بناء المجتمع



Learning Outcomes

● By the end of this unit, the student will be able to:

● بنهاية هذه الوحدة، سيكون الطالب قادرًا على أن:

Listening:

- identify features of different jobs needed in the community.
- follow conversations about helping the community.
- recognize two and three syllable words with long sounds.

- يحدد ميزات الوظائف المختلفة المطلوبة في المجتمع.
- يتبع المحادثات حول مساعدة المجتمع.
- يتعرف على الكلمات المكونة من مقطعين وثلاثة مقاطع ذات الأصوات الطويلة.

Speaking:

- describe jobs that help build a community.
- talk about ability and permission using can/can't/able to.

- يصف الوظائف التي تساعد في بناء المجتمع.
- يتحدث عن القدرة والإذن باستخدام (can / can't / able to).

Reading:

- identify key vocabulary in reading texts.
- identify the moral and characters of a fictional story.
- recognize elements and specific details in a biography.

- يحدد المفردات الأساسية في قراءة النصوص.
- يتعرف على الأخلاق والشخصيات في القصة الخيالية.
- يتعرف على العناصر والتفاصيل المحددة في السيرة الذاتية.

Writing:

- write a biography of a famous Egyptian person.
- create a poster identifying and solving a community problem.

- يكتب سيرة شخصية مشهورة.
- ينشئ ملصقًا يحدد مشكلة مجتمعية ويحلها.



Lesson 1

Jobs That Help the Community

وظائف تساعد المجتمع



Listen and say:

استمع وقل:

Main vocabulary

paramedic	مسعف	architect	مهندس معماري	water resources engineer	مهندس موارد المياه
mechanic	ميكانيكي	tailor	خياط / ترزي	delivery person	عامل توصيل
street cleaner	عامل نظافة شوارع	traffic officer	ضابط مرور		

Extra vocabulary

job	وظيفة	vehicle	مركبة	clean (adj.)	نظيف
important (adj.)	هام	emergency	حالة طارئة	brave (adj.)	شجاع
package	طرد بريدي	clothes	ملابس	beautiful (adj.)	جميل

Expressions and Phrases

do research about	يقوم ببحث عن ...	That sounds fun!	هذا يبدو ممتعاً!
make a list of	يعد قائمة بـ ...	Great idea!	فكرة رائعة!
That's cool!	هذا رائع!	make sure	يتأكد

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
want	wanted	fix	fixed
save	saved	cross	crossed
control	controlled	matter	mattered

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
make	made	get	got
keep	kept	bring	brought

Definitions

community	a group of people who live or work together in the same place مجموعة من الأشخاص يعيشون أو يعملون معاً في نفس المكان
research	to look for information to learn more about something البحث عن معلومات لمعرفة المزيد عن شيء ما
vehicles	things that people use to travel, like cars, buses, and bikes أشياء يستخدمها الناس للتنقل، مثل السيارات والحافلات والدراجات
emergency	a sudden situation that needs quick help موقف مفاجئ يحتاج إلى مساعدة سريعة
brave	not afraid to do difficult or scary things لا يخاف من فعل أشياء صعبة أو مخيفه
control	make something happen or stop جعل شيء ما يحدث أو يتوقف



Listen, read, and role-play:

استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار:



Omar

Hi, Youssef! Hi, Salma!

مرحبًا يا يوسف! مرحبًا يا سلمى!

Hey, Omar! What are you doing?

أهلاً يا عمر! ماذا تفعل؟



Youssef



Omar

I'm doing research about jobs that help our community.

أقوم بعمل بحث عن وظائف تساعد مجتمعنا.

That sounds fun! Can we help?

هذا يبدو ممتعًا! هل يمكننا المساعدة؟



Salma



Omar

Sure! I want to make a list of jobs and how they help the community.

بالتأكيد! أريد أن أعد قائمة بالوظائف وكيف يساعدون المجتمع.

Great idea. I want to be a **mechanic**.

فكرة رائعة. أريد أن أصبح ميكانيكيًا.



Youssef



Salma

Why a mechanic?

لماذا ميكانيكي؟

Because mechanics fix vehicles, and I like fixing things.

لأن الميكانيكيين يصلحون المركبات، وأنا أحب إصلاح الأشياء.



Youssef



Omar

That's cool! I want to be a **water resources engineer**.

هذا رائع! أريد أن أصبح مهندس موارد مياه.

What do water resources engineers do?

ماذا يفعل مهندسو موارد المياه؟



Salma



Omar

They make sure we get clean water in our homes and schools.

يتأكدون من حصولنا على مياه نظيفة في منازلنا ومدارسنا.

That's a very important job!

هذه وظيفة مهمة جدًا!



Youssef



Salma

I want to be a **paramedic**. They help people in emergencies.

أريد أن أصبح مسعفة، فهم يساعدون الناس في حالات الطوارئ.

That's a brave job. You'll help save lives.

هذه وظيفة شجاعة، ستساعدون في إنقاذ الأرواح.



Omar



Youssef

I also like the job of a **traffic officer**.

أنا أحب أيضًا وظيفة ضابط المرور.

Me too. They help people cross the road and control cars.

أنا أيضًا، إنهم يساعدون الناس على عبور الطريق والتحكم في السيارات.



Salma



Omar

What about a **street cleaner**?

ماذا عن عامل نظافة الشوارع؟

They clean the streets and help keep the city beautiful.

ينظفون الشوارع ويساعدون في الحفاظ على المدينة جميلة.



Read again and answer: SB

1 Why do all the students think these jobs are important?

2 Why does Youssef want to be a mechanic?



Checkpoint

Choose the correct answer: SB

يهدف هذا التدريب إلى قياس مدى فهمك للمفردات اللغوية.

- 1 What is Omar doing at the beginning of the conversation?
 - a) Writing a story.
 - b) Reading a book.
 - c) Doing research about jobs that help the community.
 - d) Watching a movie.
- 2 What kind of job does Youssef want to do?
 - a) Doctor.
 - b) Engineer.
 - c) Mechanic.
 - d) Teacher.
- 3 Why does Youssef want to be a mechanic?
 - a) He likes helping people in emergencies.
 - b) He wants to work in an office.
 - c) He enjoys fixing things.
 - d) He likes wearing uniforms.
- 4 What job does Omar want to do?
 - a) Traffic officer.
 - b) Water resources engineer.
 - c) Tailor.
 - d) Delivery person.
- 5 What do water resources engineers do?
 - a) Fix cars.
 - b) Make clothes.
 - c) Provide clean water.
 - d) Control traffic.
- 6 What job does Salma say she wants to do?
 - a) Paramedic.
 - b) Mechanic.
 - c) Police officer.
 - d) Carpenter.
- 7 Why is the job of a paramedic important?
 - a) They clean the streets.
 - b) They help people in emergencies.
 - c) They fix clothes.
 - d) They drive buses.

The Main Ideas of the Text:

الأفكار الرئيسية في النص:

- ✓ Omar is doing research about jobs that help our community.
عمر يقوم بعمل بحث عن الوظائف التي تساعد مجتمعنا.
- ✓ Mechanics fix vehicles.
الميكانيكيون يصلحون المركبات.
- ✓ Water resources engineers make sure we get clean water in our homes and schools.
مهندسو الموارد المائية يتأكدون من حصولنا على مياه نظيفة في منازلنا ومدارسنا.
- ✓ Paramedics help people quickly in emergencies.
المسعفون يساعدون الناس بسرعة في حالات الطوارئ.
- ✓ Traffic officers help people cross the road and control cars.
ضباط المرور يساعدون الناس على عبور الطريق ويتحكمون في السيارات.
- ✓ Street cleaners clean the streets and help keep the city beautiful.
عمال نظافة الشوارع ينظفون الشوارع ويساعدون في الحفاظ على جمال المدينة.

✓ Checkpoint Choose the correct answer:

يهدف هذا التدريب إلى قياس مدى فهمك للمفردات اللغوية.

- ① A (mechanic – water resources engineer – paramedic – tailor) makes sure we get clean water in our homes.
- ② A (paramedic – tailor – street cleaner – water resources engineer) helps keep the city beautiful and clean.
- ③ A (delivery person – tailor – mechanic – paramedic) is the person who helps sick people quickly.
- ④ (Paramedics – Traffic officers – Delivery persons – Tailors) help control cars.
- ⑤ A/An (engineer – architect – driver – teacher) designs houses, schools, and other buildings.
- ⑥ A (paramedic – mechanic – architect – doctor) fixes cars and machines.



Read and complete using the words in the box: SB

cleaners – research – emergency – important – tailor

- 1 The fixed my old dress.
- 2 Adam is doing for school.
- 3 Yesterday, I saw a paramedic helping people in an
- 4 Street help keep the city beautiful.
- 5 Every job is and matters.



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)



- 1 Omar, Youssef, and Salma are doing research about
a) food b) sports c) jobs d) friends
- 2 wants to be a water resources engineer.
a) Youssef b) Omar c) Salma d) Samir
- 3 Traffic officers help people cars.
a) control b) buy c) make d) sell
- 4 bring packages and food to homes.
a) Tailors b) Mechanics c) Paramedics d) Delivery persons

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 I'm doing to learn more about animals in my country.
a) dream b) research c) resource d) emergency
- 2 I can't the car. I can't stop it!
a) control b) cross c) do d) make
- 3 Water is very for our bodies.
a) dangerous b) brave c) important d) different
- 4 Adel is He is not afraid of dark places.
a) scared b) brave c) important d) clean
- 5 When someone needs quick help, it's a/an
a) emergency b) research c) job d) vehicle
- 6 A/An "....." is a group of people who live or work together.
a) emergency b) vehicle c) research d) community

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

My name is Ahmed. I'm doing research about jobs that help our community. I want to make a list of jobs and what they do. I want to be a mechanic because I like fixing things. Ali wants to be a paramedic because it's a brave job and he will help save lives. Sara wants to be a water resources engineer to help people get clean water. One day, we can all do something to help our community. My uncle is a tailor. He makes clothes and fixes old ones. These jobs are different, but they all help people.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The general idea of the text is about
a) jobs b) cities c) friends d) clothes
- Sara wants to help people get clean
a) food b) air c) water d) clothes

B Answer the following questions:

- What is Ahmed doing?
- Why does Ali want to be a paramedic?
- What does a tailor do?

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

- matters – Every – and – is – job – important.
.....
- my – fixed – The – old – coat – tailor.
.....
- do – What – engineers – water resources – do?
.....
- a – want – be – to – I – mechanic.
.....
- job – very – That's – a – important.
.....
- help – emergencies – people – in – Paramedics.
.....

5 Write a text of (50 - 60) words using the following guiding elements:

“Jobs can help our community”

water resources engineer – street cleaner – traffic officer





Listen and say:

استمع وقل:

Main vocabulary

garbage	قمامة	environment	بيئة	posters	ملصقات
bin	سلة مهملات	classmate	زميل دراسة	traffic	حركة المرور
noisy (adj.)	مزعج	principal	مدير المدرسة	sign	لافتة

Extra vocabulary

near (adj.)	قريب	terrible (adj.)	فظيع/رهيب	dangerous (adj.)	خطير
safely	بأمان	slowly	ببطء	parents	والدان
drivers	سائقون	little (adj.)	صغير	young (adj.)	صغير

Expressions and Phrases

bad for ...	سيئ لـ ...	be able to ...	قادر على أن ...
ride with ...	يركب مع ...	get better	يتحسن

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
clean	cleaned	ask	asked
join	joined	walk	walked

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
throw	threw	hang	hung
write	wrote	speak	spoke
drive	drove	ride	rode

Listening script page 37 SB

هذا النص مأخوذ من دليل المعلم.



Listen, read, and role-play:

استمع، اقرأ، وتبادل الأدوار:



Mariam

Look at all the garbage near the park. It looks terrible.

انظري إلى كل القمامة قرب الحديقة. تبدو فظيعة.

I know. People throw garbage everywhere. That's not okay.

أعرف. الناس يرمون القمامة في كل مكان. هذا ليس جيداً.



Hadi



Nour

We need to do something. It's bad for the environment.

علينا أن نفعل شيئاً. إنه سيئ للبيئة.

You're right. We can clean it this weekend.

أنت محق. يمكننا تنظيفها في نهاية هذا الأسبوع.



Mariam



Hadi

Yes, I can bring some garbage bags.

نعم، يمكنني إحضار بعض أكياس القمامة.

I can ask my teacher to let us make posters to hang around the park.

يمكنني أن أطلب من معلمتي أن تسمح لنا بصنع ملصقات لتعليقها في الحديقة.



Nour



Mariam

That's a great idea! I'll write, "Please use the bin."

هذه فكرة رائعة! سأكتب: "الرجاء استخدام سلة المهملات."

Can we ask other students to join us?

هل يمكننا أن نطلب من الطلاب الآخرين الانضمام إلينا؟



Hadi



Nour

Yes, we can. I'm sure our classmates will be able to help too.

نعم، يمكننا ذلك. أنا متأكدة أن زملاءنا في الصف سيكونون قادرين على المساعدة أيضًا.

But there's another problem — traffic near the school.

ولكن هناك مشكلة أخرى - الازدحام المروري قرب المدرسة.



Mariam



Hadi

It's very noisy and dangerous.

إنه مزيج خطير جدًا.

We can't cross the road safely in the morning.

لا يمكننا عبور الطريق بأمان في الصباح.



Nour



Mariam

Maybe we can ask our principal to help.

ربما يمكننا أن نطلب المساعدة من مديرتنا.

Can she talk to someone about it?

هل يمكنها التحدث إلى شخص ما حول هذا الموضوع؟



Hadi



Nour

Yes! She may be able to speak with the traffic officer.

نعم! قد تتمكن من التحدث مع ضابط المرور.

I think we should make signs that say "Drive Slowly!"

أعتقد أن علينا صنع لافتات تقول "قُد ببطء!"



Nour



Mariam

Can we give the signs to parents and drivers?

هل يمكننا إعطاء اللافتات للآباء والسائقين؟

Yes, we can, and we should also walk or ride bikes when we can.

نعم، يمكننا ذلك، ويجب علينا أيضًا المشي أو ركوب الدراجات عندما نستطيع.



Hadi



Nour

That's better for our health, too.

هذا أفضل لصحتنا أيضًا.

My little brother can't ride a bike yet, but he walks.

أخي الصغير لا يستطيع ركوب الدراجة بعد، لكنه يمشي.



Mariam



Hadi

My sister is young, but she's able to ride with me.

أختي صغيرة، لكنها قادرة على الركوب معي.

When we all help, things get better.

عندما نساعد جميعًا، تتحسن الأمور.



Nour



Choose the correct answer: (SB)

- 1 The traffic near the school is and dangerous.
 - a) calm
 - b) great
 - c) noisy
 - d) helpful
- 2 When we all, things get better.
 - a) play
 - b) help
 - c) dance
 - d) jump



The Main Ideas of the Text:

الأفكار الرئيسية في النص:

- ✓ The garbage near the park is a big problem. القمامة قرب الحديقة مشكلة كبيرة.
- ✓ It's bad for the environment. إنها سيئة للبيئة.
- ✓ Traffic near the school is another problem. الازدحام المروري قرب المدرسة مشكلة أخرى.
- ✓ We can't cross the road safely in the morning. لا يمكننا عبور الطريق بأمان في الصباح.
- ✓ We can hang posters and make signs to help. يمكننا تعليق الملصقات وصنع اللافتات للمساعدة.
- ✓ When we all help, things get better. عندما نساعد جميعًا، تتحسن الأمور.

Language in Use

1 can / can't يستطيع / لا يستطيع

To talk about ability in the present:

للتعبير عن القدرة في المضارع:

Affirmative form:

صيغة الإثبات:

Subject (الفاعل) + can + (inf.) (الفعل في المصدر) ...

e.g. I can bring some garbage bags.

e.g. They can clean the city.

Negative form:

صيغة النفي:

Subject (الفاعل) + can't + (inf.) (الفعل في المصدر) ...

e.g. We can't cross the road safely in the morning.

e.g. Ali can't write his name.



Got it:

Hana (can) walk because she hurt her foot.

● التصحيح: (can't) لأنها هنا لا يمكنها المشي لأن أقدامها تؤلمها.

Question:

صيغة السؤال:

Can + subject (الفاعل) + (inf.) (الفعل في المصدر) ... ?

e.g. A: Can you hang posters around the park?

B: Yes, I can.

C: No, I can't.



Note

لتكوين السؤال، نقوم بتغيير ترتيب الكلمات ونبدأ بـ Can



Got it:

Can Omar (fixes) cars?

● التصحيح: (fix) لأن Can يأتي بعدها مصدر الفعل.

2 able to قادر أن

To show ability in the present:

إظهار القدرة في المضارع:

Form:

التكوين

Subject (الفاعل) + verb to be (am/is/are) + **able to** + (inf.) (الفعل في المصدر) ...

e.g. I am **able to** speak with the traffic officer.

e.g. My sister is **able to** ride a bike.

e.g. We are **able to** help clean the city.



Got it:

I'm able (help) my community.

● التصحيح: (to help) لأن able يأتي بعدها ثم مصدر الفعل.

✓ Checkpoint 1. Choose the correct answer:

يهدف هذا التدريب إلى قياس مدى فهمك للقواعد اللغوية.

- ① She (can – can't – is – able to) drive a car so she takes the bus.
- ② A: Can you ride a bike? B: No, I (can – can't – isn't – doesn't).
- ③ (Can – Does – Are – Is) you speak English?
- ④ He can't (sleep – sleeps – slept – sleeping). His neighbors are very noisy.
- ⑤ A: Can you play the piano? B: Yes, I (do – can – can't – don't).

2. Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- ① My grandpa (can) run quickly. He is very old.
- ② A: (Is) she play tennis? B: Yes, she can.
- ③ We (can) answer this question. It's very difficult.
- ④ My friends can (helping) our community.
- ⑤ Can Omar (rode) a bike?

QUICK PRACTICE ON (CAN - CAN'T)

1 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 My sister can (played) the piano beautifully.
- 2 I am (able) run fast. **SB**
- 3 Can you (helps) me carry these bags inside?
- 4 They can (went) inside. The door is open now.
- 5 We (can) able to see your house from here.
- 6 I (can) hear you very well; the music is too loud.
- 7 Ahmed wants to join us. He (can't) help us when we need him.
- 8 We (is) able to help you with your homework.
- 9 He is able to (rides) his new bicycle.
- 10 They (can) come to the party tonight because they are busy.
- 11 She (not can) walk to school. **SB**
- 12 A: Can we start the meeting now? B: Yes, we (can't).
- 13 My car (can) go fast. I need a mechanic to fix it.
- 14 She is very busy. She (can) help us now.
- 15 Can you (opened) the door, please?

2 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

- 1 street - now - the - can - We - cross.
.....
- 2 my - phone - number - can't - She - find.
.....
- 3 party - juice - to - the - Can - some - bring - I?
.....
- 4 her - room - to - clean - is - Nada - able.
.....
- 5 library - can't - the - games - in - play - We.
.....

Practice



Lesson 2

Remembering Understanding Applying Analyzing Evaluating Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- After the party, the garden was full of
a) money b) garbage c) students d) traffic
- Ali has a problem at school. He can tell his about it.
a) trees b) dogs c) parents d) posters
- My classroom has colorful about science and history on the walls.
a) carpets b) windows c) mirrors d) posters
- We should help our community and protect our from pollution.
a) environment b) bin c) traffic d) principal
- We were late to school because the was very heavy this morning.
a) weather b) homework c) noise d) traffic
- I borrowed a pencil from my before the test started.
a) policeman b) cleaner c) classmate d) mechanic

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

hang – terrible – throw – walk

We have a big problem in our community. The garbage near the park looks (1)..... . People (2)..... garbage everywhere. It's bad for the environment. We need to do something. We can bring some garbage bags to clean it. We can make posters to (3)..... around the park. We will ask them to use the bins. Our classmates can join us to help.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

Wasting water is a big problem for the community. Sometimes, we waste water without knowing. We take long showers or leave the water running when we brush our teeth or wash the dishes. Giving plants too much water is also a waste. To stop this, we can do easy things: Take shorter showers. Always turn off the water when you are not using it. When you wash a car, use a bucket دلو instead of a hose خرطوم مياه. If we all do these simple things, we can save water. This is good for our world.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 water is bad for the community.
 a) Drinking b) Buying c) Using d) Wasting
- 2 When you wash a car, use a
 a) hose b) bottle c) bucket d) brush

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 How do people waste water when they wash the dishes?

- 4 What can we do to stop wasting water?

- 5 Why should we take shorter showers?

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

- 1 can't - My - sister - swim - little.
- 2 do - the - can - research - I.
- 3 able - drive - to - is - Sara - a car.
- 4 help - the - Can - clean - garden - you?

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 Can you (saw) that big cloud?
- 2 Salma (can) hear us because we're too far.
- 3 A: (Can't) they do the research? B: Yes, they can. **SB**
- 4 Fady (be) able to play football.
- 5 My neighbor (can) read English, so I help him.
- 6 Spiders are able (climb) walls.

6 Write a text of (50 - 60) words using the following guiding elements:

"Solving my community problems"

garbage - traffic - ride bikes





Listen, and say:

Story

استمع وقل:

Main vocabulary

dry (adj.)	جاف	creature	مخلوق	unpleasant (adj.)	مرعج / كريه
seasons	فصول السنة	weak (adj.)	ضعيف	refreshed (adj.)	منتعش
embarrassed (adj.)	مُحْزَج	bright (adj.)	مضيء / ساطع		

Extra vocabulary

rose	وردة	petals	بتلات	sweet (adj.)	حلو / جميل
proud (adj.)	فخور	rough (adj.)	خشن / قاسي	cactus	صبار
sharp (adj.)	حاد	thorns	أشواك	ugly (adj.)	قبيح
anywhere	في أي مكان	gently	بلطف	surprised (adj.)	متفاجئ

Expressions and Phrases

once upon a time	ذات مرة	covered in	مغطى بـ
make fun of	يسخر من	from then on	منذ ذلك الحين

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past		Present		Past	
sparkle	يتألق	sparkled		admire	يعجب بـ	admired	
cover	يغطي	coved		peck	ينقر	pecked	
share	يشارك	shared		judge	يحكم على	judged	

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past		Present		Past	
grow	ينمو - يكبر	grew		think	يعتقد	thought	
shine	يشرق	shone		begin	يبدأ	began	
become	يصبح	became		speak	يتحدث	spoke	

Definitions

thorns	the sharp points that grow on the stem or a branch of a plant to protect it الأشواك الحادة التي تنمو على ساق أو فرع نبات لحمايته
petals	the soft, colorful parts of a flower that surround its center الأجزاء الملونة والناعمة من الزهرة التي تحيط بالمركز
to peck	to hit or pick up something with a beak, like a bird does ضرب أو التقاط شيء ما بمنقاره، كما يفعل الطائر
unpleasant	when something is not nice and makes you feel unhappy or uncomfortable عندما يكون هناك شيء غير لطيف ويجعلك تشعر بالحزن أو عدم الارتياح

The Proud Rose

الوردة الفخورة

انظر واقرأ:

Look and read:

The beginning:

Once upon a time, in a **dry**⁽¹⁾ desert far away, there lived a beautiful rose. She had soft red **petals**⁽²⁾ that **sparkled**⁽³⁾ in the sunlight and gave off a sweet, lovely smell. Every **creature**⁽⁴⁾ in the desert admired her beauty, and the rose knew it. She was very proud of how she looked and believed she was the most special plant in the desert.



- (1) جاف
(2) بتلات
(3) تألقت
(4) مخلوق

✓ **Checkpoint** The rose had soft red petals that (**shone** – **smelled** – **danced** – **sparkled**) in the sunlight.

The middle:

Growing next to the rose was an old, **rough** **cactus**⁽⁵⁾. He was covered in long, **sharp** **thorns**⁽⁶⁾ and didn't have any flowers or **bright**⁽⁷⁾ colors. The rose didn't like the cactus at all. She looked at him every day and thought he was **unpleasant**⁽⁸⁾ to look at. "Why do you have so many thorns?" she would ask. "You're so rough and unpleasant to look at." Even though the cactus never said anything mean back, the rose kept making fun of him.



- (5) صبار خشن
(6) أشواك حادة
(7) ساطع
(8) كريه / مزعج
(9) مواسم
(10) أشرقت
(11) ضعيف

Seasons⁽⁹⁾ passed, and one year, the summer was much hotter than usual. The sun **shone**⁽¹⁰⁾, and the desert grew even drier. All the small plants began to dry up. Soon, the beautiful rose started to lose her color. Her petals became dry and **weak**⁽¹¹⁾. She was very thirsty, but there was no water anywhere.

✓ **Checkpoint** The rose thought the cactus was (**bright** – **kind** – **unpleasant** – **friendly**).

The end:

One day, the rose saw a small bird fly down and gently **peck**⁽¹²⁾ at the cactus. The bird drank some water from inside the cactus and flew away, happy and **refreshed**⁽¹³⁾. The rose was surprised. She didn't know the cactus had water inside.

Feeling **embarrassed**⁽¹⁴⁾, the rose spoke to the cactus. "I'm sorry for the way I treated you," she said. "I didn't know you were so strong and helpful. Could you please give me some water?" The kind cactus smiled and shared his water with the rose. Slowly, the rose came back to life. From that day on, she never **judged**⁽¹⁵⁾ anyone by how they looked again.

(12)	ينقر
(13)	منتعش
(14)	محرج
(15)	تحكم على

✓ Checkpoint The cactus (**ignored – smiled – shouted – laughed**) and shared his water with the rose.

The moral of the story

Never judge others by how they look.

لا تحكم على الآخرين أبدًا من خلال مظهرهم.

**Tip!**

Every story has a moral. A **moral** is the lesson or message we learn from a story. It usually teaches us the difference between right and wrong, and helps us think about how we should act in real life.

كل قصة لها مغزى أخلاقي. الدرس الأخلاقي هو الدرس أو الرسالة التي نتعلمها من قصة ما. فهو عادة ما يعلمنا الفرق بين الصواب والخطأ، ويساعدنا على التفكير في كيفية التصرف في الحياة الواقعية.

The Main Ideas of the Text:**الأفكار الرئيسية في النص:**

- ✓ A proud, beautiful rose lived in a dry desert, next to a rough cactus.
عاشت وردة جميلة مغرورة في صحراء جافة، بجانب صبار خشن.
- ✓ The rose often made fun of the cactus for his unpleasant look.
كانت الوردة تسخر غالبًا من الصبار بسبب مظهره البشع.
- ✓ One hot summer, the rose began to dry up as there was no water.
في أحد فصول الصيف الحارة، بدأت الوردة تجف؛ لأنه لم يكن هناك ماء.
- ✓ She saw a bird drink water from inside the cactus, surprising her.
رأت طائرًا يشرب الماء من داخل الصبار، مما أدهشها.
- ✓ The cactus kindly shared his water with the rose.
شارك الصبار مياهه بلطف مع الوردة.
- ✓ From that day on, she never judged anyone by how they looked again.
ومنذ ذلك اليوم لم تحكم أبدًا على أي شخص من خلال مظهره مرة أخرى.



Pronunciation



Listen and say:

Syllables المقاطع الصوتية

استمع وقل:

في اللغة الإنجليزية توجد كلمات تحتوي على مقطع صوتي واحد، وهناك كلمات تحتوي على مقطعين أو ثلاثة أو أكثر.

2 Syllables

tailor	tai-lor
traffic	traf-fic

3 Syllables

mechanic	me-CHAN-ic
architect	ar-CHI-tect
officer	of-fi-cer
vehicle	ve-HI-cle

Stress in words

is the part of the word we say louder and stronger.

هو الجزء من الكلمة الذي نقوله بصوت أعلى وأقوى.

In **one-syllable** words, the whole word is stressed.

في الكلمات المكونة من مقطع صوتي واحد، يتم التأكيد على الكلمة بأكملها.

e.g. NURSE

In **two-syllable** words, stress is usually on the first syllable.

في الكلمات المكونة من مقطعين، عادة ما يكون الضغط "التشديد" على المقطع الأول.

e.g. tailor → TAI-lor

In some **three-syllable** words, stress is on the second syllable.

e.g. mechanic → me-CHAN-ic

في الكلمات المكونة من ثلاثة مقاطع، عادة ما يكون الضغط "التشديد" على المقطع الثاني.



Read the sentences. Write if the stress is on the first syllable or the second syllable of the bold words: **SB**

- 1 The **tailor** made a beautiful dress.
- 2 A **mechanic** fixed our family car yesterday.
- 3 The **architect** designed a new school building.
- 4 A **traffic** officer helped the children cross the street safely.
- 5 The **vehicle** was parked near the library.



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The thorns are very I can't touch them. **SD**
 a) soft b) nice c) sharp d) great
- 2 are the colorful, soft parts of a flower that surround the center.
 a) Cactus b) Roses c) Petals d) Thorns
- 3 The cactus grows in the
 a) desert b) sky c) tree d) water
- 4 The food has a/an smell, so we can't eat it.
 a) unpleasant b) beautiful c) sweet d) good
- 5 The weather in the desert is very and hot.
 a) cool b) rainy c) soft d) dry
- 6 I felt when I couldn't remember my classmate's name.
 a) proud b) happy c) embarrassed d) good
- 7 Summer is one of the of the year.
 a) months b) seasons c) days d) weeks
- 8 When I drink orange juice, I feel
 a) refreshed b) dry c) weak d) unpleasant
- 9 The bird uses its beak to the corn and eat it.
 a) grow b) change c) drink d) peck
- 10 Cats are beautiful and kind
 a) plants b) creatures c) seasons d) petals

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

weak – thirsty – shone – refreshed

One year, the summer was hotter than ever. The sun (1)..... strongly, and the rose began to dry up, her petals became dry and (2)..... There was no water anywhere. One day, the rose saw a bird peck at the cactus, then drink water from inside it and fly away (3)..... Feeling embarrassed, she asked the cactus for help. He kindly shared his water, and the rose slowly recovered.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

A proud rose in a dry desert made fun of a rough cactus because she thought he was ugly. However, the cactus never responded unkindly. One hot summer, the rose began to dry up because there was no water anywhere. She was surprised when one day she saw a bird drink water from inside the cactus. Embarrassed, the rose asked the cactus for help. The kind cactus shared his water, and the rose slowly recovered. From then on, she never judged others by their looks and she became close friends with the cactus.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The made fun of the cactus.
a) bird b) sun c) desert d) rose
- The rose was to see a bird drink water from inside the cactus.
a) surprised b) unpleasant c) sad d) angry

B Answer the following questions:

- Why did the rose begin to dry up?
.....
- What happened after the cactus helped the rose?
.....
- What did the cactus share with the rose?
.....

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

- came – Slowly, – rose – the – life – to – back.
.....
- kept – of – making – The – fun – rose – him.
.....
- cactus – sharp – The – covered – thorns – is – in.
.....
- help – for – asked – the – cactus – She.
.....

5 Punctuate the following:

- the sun shone strongly
.....
- why do you have so many thorns
.....



Lessons 4 and 5



Listen, and say:

استمع وقل:

Main vocabulary

Egyptian (adj.)	مصري	scientist	عالِم	university	جامعة
achievement	إنجاز	discovery	اكتشاف	hero	بطل
food waste	إهدار الطعام	leftovers	بقايا الطعام	food bank	بنك طعام

Extra vocabulary

brilliant (adj.)	عبقري / ذكي جدًا	chemistry	كيمياء	nanoscience	علوم النانو
tiny (adj.)	ضئيل / صغير الحجم	human hair	شعر الإنسان	scientific (adj.)	علمي
particles	جسيمات	cancer	مرض السرطان	award	جائزة
national (adj.)	وطني	medal	ميدالية	true (adj.)	حقيقي
extra (adj.)	إضافي	poor (adj.)	فقير	garbage	قمامة / نفايات
smart (adj.)	ذكي	properly	بشكل صحيح	global (adj.)	عالمي

Expressions and Phrases

was born in	وُلِدَ في	expert in	خبير في
named after him	سميت باسمه	types of	أنواع من
throw away	يلقي بعيدًا / يتخلص من	a source of pride for Egypt!	مصدر فخر لمصر!

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
continue يستمر / يواصل	continued	treat يعالج / يعامل	treated
receive يستلم / يتلقى	received	donate يتبرع	donated
waste يهدر / يضيع	wasted	cause يسبب / يؤدي إلى	caused
plan يخطط	planned	support يدعم / يساند	supported
store يخزن	stored	detect يكتشف	detected

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
find out يكتشف	found out	feed يطعم	fed

A Biography of an Egyptian Hero

سيرة ذاتية لبطل مصري

Dr. Mostafa El-Sayed: Science With a Golden Touch

Mostafa El-Sayed is a **brilliant**⁽¹⁾ Egyptian scientist! He was born in Egypt in 1933 and had a great love for learning from a young age. He studied at Ain Shams **University**⁽²⁾ in Cairo before going to the United States to continue his **scientific**⁽³⁾ research.



(1) عبقرى

(2) جامعة

(3) علمى

✓ **Checkpoint** Where was Mostafa El-Sayed born? **SB**

Dr. El-Sayed became a **global expert**⁽⁴⁾ in chemistry and nanoscience. **Nanoscience**⁽⁵⁾ is the study of very **tiny**⁽⁶⁾ things - much smaller than a human hair. One of his most important **discoveries**⁽⁷⁾ is called El-Sayed's Rule. A scientific idea that was named after him.

(4) خبير عالمى

(5) علم النانو

(6) ضئيل

(7) استكشافات

✓ **Checkpoint** Where was Mostafa El-Sayed born? **SB**

One of his biggest achievements is his work with tiny gold **particles**⁽⁸⁾. He found out how these "gold nanoparticles" can be used to help doctors **detect**⁽⁹⁾ and treat some types of **cancer**⁽¹⁰⁾. Because of his important discoveries, Dr. El-Sayed has received many major awards, including the U.S. National Medal of Science. He's a true hero of science and a source of **pride**⁽¹¹⁾ for Egypt!

(8) جسيمات

(9) يكتشف

(10) مرض السرطان

(11) فخر

✓ **Checkpoint** Why do you think Egypt is proud of Dr. El-Sayed? **SB**



The Main Ideas of the Text:

الأفكار الرئيسية في النص:

- ✓ Dr. Mostafa El-Sayed is a brilliant Egyptian scientist!
الدكتور مصطفى السيد عالم مصري عبقري!
- ✓ He was born in Egypt in 1933.
وُلد في مصر عام ١٩٣٣.
- ✓ He studied at Ain Shams University in Cairo.
درس في جامعة عين شمس بالقاهرة.
- ✓ Dr. El-Sayed became a top expert in chemistry and nanoscience.
أصبح الدكتور السيد خبيرًا بارزًا في الكيمياء وعلوم النانو.
- ✓ He found out how these "gold nanoparticles" can be used to help doctors.
اكتشف كيف يمكن استخدام «جسيمات الذهب النانوية» هذه لمساعدة الأطباء.
- ✓ Dr. El-Sayed has received many big awards.
لقد حصل الدكتور السيد على العديد من الجوائز الكبيرة.
- ✓ He's a true hero of science and a source of pride for Egypt.
إنه بطل حقيقي للعلم ومصدر فخر لمصر.

نصائح لكتابة السيرة الذاتية! Tips for writing a biography!

- 1 Start with key facts.
ابدأ بالحقائق الأساسية.
- 2 Tell about their early life.
تحدث عن حياتهم المبكرة.
- 3 Say what they did.
تحدث عما فعلوه (إنجازاتهم/أعمالهم).
- 4 Use the correct time order.
استخدم الترتيب الزمني الصحيح.
- 5 Add fun facts.
أضف حقائق مثيرة للاهتمام.
- 6 Use clear and simple language.
استخدم لغة واضحة وبسيطة.
- 7 End with their impact.
اختتم بتأثيرهم.

Write a biography about your favorite famous Egyptian person.

.....

.....

.....

.....

Let's Solve a Community Problem!

Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

Food Waste In Egypt

Causes الأسباب

- ☑ People make more food than they eat. الناس يصنعون طعامًا أكثر مما يأكلون.
- ☑ Restaurants throw away leftover food. المطاعم ترمي الطعام المتبقى.
- ☑ No easy way to donate extra food. لا توجد طريقة سهلة للتبرع بالطعام الزائد.
- ☑ People don't think about wasting food. الناس لا يفكرون في إهدار الطعام.

Effects التأثيرات

- ☑ Good food is thrown away. الطعام الجيد يُرمى بعيدًا.
- ☑ Many poor people don't get food. الكثير من الفقراء لا يحصلون على الطعام.
- ☑ Wasting food wastes money and water. إهدار الطعام يهدر المال والماء.
- ☑ More garbage, which causes more pollution. المزيد من القمامة، مما يسبب المزيد من التلوث.

Solutions الحلول

- ☑ Plan meals. خطط للوجبات.
- ☑ Shop smart. تسوق بذكاء.
- ☑ Support food banks. ادمع بنوك الطعام.
- ☑ Feed animals leftovers. أطعم الحيوانات بقايا الطعام.
- ☑ Store food properly. خزن الطعام بشكل صحيح.

Practice



Lessons 4 and 5

Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 My little sister has a/an mind. She can answer difficult questions.
a) poor b) extra c) brilliant d) achievement
- 2 When we cook more food than we need, it's called food.
a) wasting b) buying c) donating d) feeding
- 3 We study during science lessons.
a) English b) chemistry c) art d) food
- 4 After lunch, we put the in the fridge.
a) particles b) awards c) leftovers d) good

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

garbage – thirsty – wasting – leftover

Food waste is a real problem in Egypt. People often cook more than they eat, especially for family gatherings. Restaurants also throw away much good (1)..... food. This waste means we lose money and water. It creates more (2)....., causing more pollution in our environment. Sadly, while food is wasted, many poor Egyptians don't get enough to eat. We must think about this and find ways to stop (3)..... food.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

Dr. Mostafa El-Sayed is a brilliant Egyptian scientist! He was born in Egypt in 1933 and always loved learning. He studied at Ain Shams University in Cairo before going to the United States to continue his amazing research. Dr. El-Sayed became a top expert in chemistry and nanoscience. One of his biggest achievements is his work with tiny gold particles. He found out how these "gold nanoparticles" can be used to help doctors find and even treat some types of cancer. For all his important discoveries, Dr. El-Sayed has received many big awards. He makes Egypt very proud!

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Dr. Mostafa El-Sayed always loved
a) reading b) eating c) learning d) traveling
- 2 He found out a way to treat some types of
a) cancer b) headache c) fever d) chemistry

B Answer the following questions:

3 Where did Dr. Mostafa continue his research?

4 How are gold nanoparticles used in his research?

5 Summarize the text in two sentences.

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1 University – at – Ain – He – Shams – studied.

2 tiny – studying – is – things – Nanoscience – about.

3 science – hero – a – He's – true – of.

4 money – wastes – Wasting – and – food – water.

5 food – away – Restaurants – throw – leftover.

5 Punctuate the following:

nanoscience is super cool

6 Write a text of (50 - 60) words using the following guiding elements:

"My favorite famous Egyptian person"

born – studied – lives



Unit 3

REVIEW



يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من مراجعة أهم الأجزاء التي وردت بالوحدة.

Lesson (1)

paramedic	مسعف	water resources engineer	مهندس موارد المياه
mechanic	ميكانيكي	delivery person	عامل توصيل
street cleaner	عامل نظافة شوارع	vehicle	مركبة
architect	مهندس معماري	emergency	حالة طارئة
tailor	خياط / اتريزي	brave (adj.)	شجاع
traffic officer	ضابط مرور	job	وظيفة

Lesson (2)

garbage	قمامة	posters	ملصقات
bin	سلة مهملات	traffic	حركة المرور
noisy	مزعج	sign	لافتة
environment	بيئة	safely	بأمان
classmate	زميل دراسة	terrible	فظيخ / رهيب
principal	مدير المدرسة	parents	والدان

Lesson (3)

dry	جاف	refreshed	منتعش
seasons	فصول السنة	rose	وردة
embarrassed	مُحْزَج	proud	فخور
creature	مخلوق	cactus	صبار
weak	ضعيف	ugly	قبيح
unpleasant	مزعج	petals	بتلات
bright	ساطع	sharp	حاد
rough	خشن / قايص	thorns	أشواك

Lessons (4 and 5)

Egyptian	مصري	brilliant	عبقري / ذكي جدًا
achievement	إنجاز	chemistry	كيمياء
food waste	إهدار الطعام	garbage	قمامة / نفايات
scientist	عالِم	particles	جسيمات
discovery	اكتشاف	national	وطني
leftovers	بقايا الطعام	medal	ميدالية
university	جامعة	scientific	علمي
hero	بطل	global	عالمي

can/can't/able to

نستخدم can/can't/able to للتعبير عن القدرة أو عدم القدرة على فعل الشيء.

Affirmative form:

صيغة الإثبات:

... (الفعل في المصدر) + can + (الفاعل)

e.g. I can bring some garbage bag.

Negative form:

صيغة النفي:

... (الفعل في المصدر) + can't + (الفاعل)

e.g. We can't cross the road safely in the morning.

Question:

السؤال:

... ? (الفعل في المصدر) + Can + subject (الفاعل)

e.g. A: Can you hang posters around the park? B: Yes, I can. C: No, I can't.

Form:

التكوين:

... (الفعل في المصدر) + able to + verb to be (am/is/are) + Subject (الفاعل)

e.g. She is able to speak with the traffic officer.

e.g. My sister is able to ride a bike.

Unit 3

CHECK YOUR VOCABULARY



تأكد من حفظك لكلمات الدروس قبل البدء في إجابة اختبار الوحدة.

Lesson 1

الكلمة بالعربية	الكلمة بالإنجليزية	
street cleaner		ميكانيكي
water resources engineer		ضابط مرور
package		خياط / ترزى
brave		مركبة
paramedic		عامل توصيل

Lesson 2

garbage	.....	مزعج
classmate	.....	بيئة
bin	.....	مدير المدرسة
posters	.....	لافتة
dangerous	.....	حركة المرور

Lesson 3

cactus	.....	مخلوق
sharp	.....	ضعيف
thorns	.....	جاف
rough	.....	منتعش
rose	.....	مزعج / كريبه

Lessons 4 and 5

discovery	.....	بطل
tiny	.....	بقايا الطعام
particles	.....	عبقري
achievement	.....	مصري

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

يهدف هذا التدريب إلى قياس مدى حفظ الطالب لتصريفات الأفعال.

Present

support
control

fix

cross

Past

threw

Present

join
ride

keep

Past

fed

treated

”تسميع كلمات أكثر خاصة بهذه الوحدة .. اذهب إلى كراسة التسميع آخر الكتاب“.



لكي تتمكن من كتابة الموضوعات بشكل مميز، اتبع هذه الخطوات.

How to write about jobs that help the community:

- o I want to be a (الوظيفة).
- o They (كيف تساعد هذه الوظيفة الناس).
- o My friend wants to be a (الوظيفة).
- o They (كيف تساعد هذه الوظيفة الناس).
- o ادعو الآخرين لمساعدة المجتمع.

"Jobs that Help the Community"

I want to be a paramedic. They help people quickly in emergencies. It's a brave job. My friend wants to be a traffic officer. They help people cross the road and control cars. These jobs are different, but they all help people. We can all do something to help our community.

How to write about a biography:

- o (المجال المتخصص فيه) is one of the most famous اسم الشخص.
- o He was born in (سنة الميلاد / مكان الميلاد).
- o He studied (اسم الجامعة) at (مجال دراسته) University ...
- o He became one of the top (الوظيفة) in the world.

"A Biography of an Egyptian Hero"

Dr. Magdi Yacoub is one of the most famous heart doctors in the world. He was born in 1935 in Assuit, a city in Upper Egypt. He studied medicine at Cairo University and then moved to England to learn more about heart surgery. He became one of the top heart surgeons in the world.

1 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1 play / I / outside / can / football.

2 speak / well / She's / English / able to / very/.

3 clean / room / Can / the / today / they /?

4 able to / They / sing / are / beautifully /.

2 Read and complete the sentences using can, can't, or able to:

1 a delivery person ride motorcycles?

2 My brother is fix my computer.

3 Ali run fast. He hurt his leg.

4 She is answer all the questions in the test.

5 My little brother write yet, but he's learning.

6 Leila and Hana are finish their homework before dinner.

7 A: you speak French? B: Yes, I can.

8 I go today. I have a lot of work to do.

3 Read and complete the summary with the words in the box:

said sorry – soft – rose – cactus – water – dry – proud

In a desert, there lived a (1)..... with (2)..... red petals. She was very (3)..... and often made fun of the rough (4)..... covered in sharp thorns. During a very hot summer, the desert became even drier, and the rose became weak and thirsty. One day, she saw a bird drink (5)..... from inside the cactus. Feeling sorry, she (6)....., and the kind cactus shared his water with her, and they became good friends.



Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

- A lived beside a rough cactus.
a) bird b) rose c) tree d) flowerpot
- The rose was and made fun of the cactus.
a) helpful b) kind c) proud d) thirsty
- One day, a bird drank water from the
a) rose b) desert c) cactus d) flower
- The cactus his water with the rose.
a) kept b) shared c) threw d) stole



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1.5

- She is because she is very sick.
a) proud b) brave c) refreshed d) weak
- He fixed the car quickly. He is a/an
a) expert b) paramedic c) vehicle d) architect
- Ahmed isn't afraid to do something difficult or scary. He is
a) unpleasant b) clean c) brave d) embarrassed

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

1.5

brings – paramedic – vehicles – builds

Our community needs helpful jobs. A (1)..... helps in emergencies, saving lives. An architect designs safe buildings, while a water resources engineer makes sure we have clean water. A tailor makes clothes, and a delivery person (2)..... things to our houses. Our street cleaner keeps our city beautiful and clean. A mechanic fixes our (3)..... These jobs are different, but they all help people.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

7

Dr. Magdi Yacoub is one of the most famous *cardiologists in the world. He was born in 1935 in Assuit, a city in Upper Egypt. When he was a young boy, his aunt died because she had heart problems. That made him decide to become a heart doctor, so he could help save lives. Dr. Magdi Yacoub is a real hero. He shows us how one person can make a big difference in the world. His life teaches us the importance of using our *talents to help our community.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Dr. Magdi was born in
a) Alexandria b) Cairo c) Assuit d) Aswan
- 2 Dr. Magdi's aunt died because of she had problems.
a) stomach b) lung c) neck d) heart

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 Why is Dr. Magdi areal hero?
- 4 What does his life teach us?
- 5 Summarize the text in two sentences.



Writing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1

- 1 dress – tailor – beautiful – a – The – made.
.....

- 2 to – able – speak – She – English – is.
.....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

4

- 1 We can't (ate) more. We're not hungry.
- 2 I (able to) swim in the sea.

7 Punctuate the following:

4

- 1 The rose didn t say sorry to the cactus
- 2 he studied in Egypt

8 Write a text of (50-60) words using the following guiding elements:

7

"Jobs that help our community"

tailor – mechanic – important





Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

- 1 A/An helps in emergencies, saving lives.
a) tailor b) paramedic c) mechanic d) architect
- 2 A delivery person things to our houses.
a) cleans b) fixes c) builds d) brings
- 3 A mechanic fixes our
a) clothes b) buildings c) vehicles d) water
- 4 These jobs can help many
a) people b) buildings c) clothes d) streets



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1.5

- 1 Ali is my He always sits beside me in class.
a) scientist b) principal c) classmate d) worker
- 2 I'm looking for more information to do about sports.
a) environment b) community c) emergency d) research
- 3 The desert is always hot and
a) dry b) clean c) proud d) embarrassed

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

1.5

cactus – proud – unpleasant – shared

In a hot desert, a beautiful rose with soft red petals grew beside a rough cactus covered in sharp thorns. The (1)..... rose made fun of his unpleasant appearance. But during a dry summer, the rose was very weak and began to dry up. The (2)..... gave water to a thirsty bird, and then kindly (3)..... it with the rose. The rose said sorry, and they became friends forever.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

7

Dr. Mostafa El-Sayed is a brilliant Egyptian scientist! He was born in Egypt in 1933 and always loved learning. He studied at Ain Shams University in Cairo before going to the United States to continue his amazing research. One of his biggest achievements is his work with tiny gold particles. He found out how these "gold nanoparticles" can be used to help doctors find, and even treat some types of cancer. Dr. El-Sayed has received many big awards, including the US National Medal of Science, for all his important discoveries. He's a true hero of science and he makes Egypt proud.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Dr. Mostafa El-Sayed is a brilliant Egyptian!
a) paramedic b) scientist c) architect d) officer
- 2 He makes very proud.
a) Egypt b) the US c) United States d) Ain Shams

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 Why is Dr. Magdy a real hero?
- 4 Where did he go to continue his research?
- 5 Summarize the text in two sentences.



Writing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1

- 1 food – get – people – don't – poor – Many

- 2 you – help – Can – community – your?

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

4

- 1 A: Can they come with us? B: No, they (can).
- 2 Samir is able (sing).

7 Punctuate the following:

4

- 1 Yes, i can
- 2 the rose didn't like the cactus at all

8 Write a text of (50-60) words using the following guiding elements:

7

"A community problem"

wasting food – garbage – leftovers



A. Language Functions

1 Read and complete the dialog:

scientific – achievements – admire – proud – hero

- Mona : What are you doing?
 Arwa : I am reading a book about Dr. Mustafa El-Sayed.
 Mona : I (1) _____ him. He helps a lot of people by his discoveries.
 Arwa : Me, too. He is a real (2) _____.
 Mona : Do you know that he had an important (3) _____ idea named after him?
 Arwa : Yes, he has received many big awards for his (4) _____.
 Mona : He makes Egypt very (5) _____.

B. Vocabulary and Structures

2 Read and circle the odd one out and replace it with the correct word:

- | | | | | | |
|---|------------|-------------|-----------|-----------|-------|
| 1 | season | embarrassed | weak | refreshed | ..... |
| 2 | proud | rough | sharp | unkindly | ..... |
| 3 | walked | rode | asked | joined | ..... |
| 4 | different | officer | paramedic | cleaner | ..... |
| 5 | university | medal | desert | street | ..... |

3 Choose the correct answer:

- She brought a/an _____ sandwich to share with her friend.
 a) tiny b) extra c) poor
- Please, throw the _____ in the bin before you leave.
 a) money b) awards c) garbage
- If you don't water the flowers, they will start to _____.
 a) dry up b) grow c) run
- The rose has sharp _____, so be careful when you touch it.
 a) posters b) petals c) thorns
- We went to the mechanic to fix our _____.
 a) vehicle b) clothes c) computer
- Can roses _____ in the desert?
 a) grow b) grew c) growing
- Fish _____ live outside the water.
 a) able b) can c) can't
- Omar is able _____ cook food.
 a) in b) to c) for
- My grandpa can't _____ well.
 a) saw b) see c) sees
- They _____ able to find out the answer.
 a) is b) isn't c) aren't

C. Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

As the seasons changed one year, the summer was hotter than ever. The sun shone strongly, and the rose began to dry up, her petals became dry and weak. There was no water anywhere. One day, the rose saw a bird peck gently at the cactus, then drink water from inside it and fly away, refreshed. She was surprised—she hadn't known he stored water. Feeling embarrassed, she asked the cactus for help. He kindly shared his water, and the rose slowly recovered. From then on, she never judged others by how they looked and became close friends with the cactus.

A Choose the correct answer:

- The (cactus – moon – sun – summer) shone strongly.
- The rose felt (embarrassed – proud – refreshed – strong) when she asked for help.

B Answer the following questions:

- What happened to the rose when the summer was very hot?
- How did the bird drink water from the cactus?
- What is the moral of the story?

D. Writing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

- food – about – think – don't – People – wasting.

- feed – leftovers – You – animals – can.

- car – a – drive – to – able – I'm.

- my – you – me – book – bring – Can?

- bird – a – saw – She – water – drink.

6 Write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences using the following guiding elements:

"A biography of an important person"

born – university – achievements – help – community

Unit

4

Resources Around Us

المصادر حولنا

Learning Outcomes

• By the end of this unit, the student will be able to:

• بنهاية هذه الوحدة، سيكون الطالب قادرًا على أن:

Speaking

- talk about materials used in Egypt.
- share ideas with a partner about how to save energy.
- express opinions and give advice using modal verbs.

- يتحدث عن المواد الخام التي استخدمت في مصر.
- يتشارك الأفكار مع شريك عن كيفية الحفاظ على الطاقة.
- يعبر عن آرائه ويعطي نصيحة باستخدام الأفعال الناقصة.

Listening

- identify key facts in short texts about materials and energy.
- follow conversations about real life topics.
- identify specific information using context clues and key vocabulary.

- يحدد الحقائق الرئيسية في نصوص قصيرة عن المواد الخام والطاقة.
- يتبع محادثات حول مواضيع الحياة الواقعية.

- identify long and short /ʊ/ and /u:/

- يحدد معلومات محددة باستخدام دلائل السياق والمفردات الأساسية.
- يحدد الصوت الطويل /u:/ والصوت القصير /ʊ/

Reading

- differentiate between natural and man-made resources in an informational text.

- يميز بين الموارد الطبيعية والموارد التي من صنع الإنسان في نص معلوماتي.

- identify facts, details, and main ideas in a short passage.
- answer Wh-questions and complete tasks based on reading.

- يتعرف على الحقائق، التفاصيل والأفكار الرئيسية في فقرة قصيرة.
- يجب عن أسئلة استفهام ويكمل المهام بناءً على القراءة.

Writing

- write a fact file.
- use modal verbs correctly (must, mustn't, should, shouldn't) in writing.

- يكتب ملف حقائق.

- plan and organize a research using clear steps.

- يستخدم الأفعال الناقصة (must, mustn't, should, shouldn't) بطريقة صحيحة في الكتابة.
- يخطط وينظم بحثًا مستخدمًا خطوات صحيحة.



Lesson 1

Egypt: past and present

مصر: بين ماضى وحاضر



Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشير، وقل:

Main vocabulary

granite	جرانيت	colored stones	أحجار ملونة	gold	ذهب
clay	طين/صلصال	papyrus	نبات البردي	bricks	طوب
temple	معبد	amulet	تميمة	materials	مواد/خامات
survive	ينجو / يدوم	ancient (adj.)	قديم / أثري	decorate	يزين
wrapped	لف / غلف	modern (adj.)	حديث	culture	ثقافة

Extra vocabulary

linen	كتان	wood	خشب	scroll	مخطوطة
unbelievable (adj.)	مدهش	buildings	مبانٍ	statues	تماثيل
sculptures	منحوتات/ تماثيل	flax	نبات الكتان	mummies	موميאות
pots	أواني / أوعية	jars	برطمانات	exactly	بالضبط
stones	أحجار	jewelry	مجوهرات	natural (adj.)	طبيعي
useful (adj.)	مفيد	fascinating (adj.)	رائع (جذاب)	recent (adj.)	حديث

Expressions and Phrases

made from	مصنوع من	shaped like	على شكل
-----------	----------	-------------	---------

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
carve	carved	wrap	wrapped
last	lasted	shape	shaped

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
read	read	wear	wore

Definitions

material	something used to make things	مادة تُستخدم لصنع الأشياء
survive	continue to exist for a long time	الاستمرار في الوجود (البقاء) لفترة طويلة
ancient	very old; from a long time ago	قديم جدًا؛ من العصور القديمة
decorate	to make something look nice or beautiful	يجعل شيئًا ما يبدو رائعًا أو جميلًا
wrapped	covered something by putting material or cloth around it	عطى شيء ما بوضع مادة أو قماش حوله
modern	from recent times; not old	من العصر الحالي، ليس قديمًا



Listen, read, and role-play:

استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار:



Nour

Hey Omar! Are you working on the history project?

مرحبًا عمر! هل تعمل على مشروع التاريخ؟



Omar

Yes! I'm reading about materials the Ancient Egyptians used. It's so cool. They used stone, clay, papyrus, linen, wood, and even gold!

نعم أنا أقرأ عن المواد التي استخدمها المصريون القدماء. إنه شيء رائع جدًا. لقد استخدموا الحجر، الطين، البردي، الكتان، والخشب، وحتى الذهب!



Nour

That's amazing! I saw a picture of a papyrus scroll in a museum. It's unbelievable how long that material could survive!

هذا مذهل! لقد رأيت صورة مخطوطة من البردي في متحف. إنه أمر لا يصدق أن هذه المادة دامت/بقيت لكل هذا الوقت!



Omar

I know! And some materials are still used today. Stone is used in modern buildings — just like they used it for pyramids and temples.

أعلم! وبعض المواد لا تزال تُستخدم حتى اليوم. فالحجر يُستخدم في المباني الحديثة - تمامًا كما استخدموه في الأهرامات والمعابد.



Nour

And statues! I love how they carved huge statues from granite. We still use stone today for sculptures and buildings.

والتماثيل! أحب الطريقة التي نحتوا بها تماثيل ضخمة من الجرانيت. وما زلنا نستخدم الحجر اليوم للمنحوتات والمباني.



Omar

And linen! It's made from flax. Ancient Egyptians wore it every day — and even wrapped mummies in it

قمّاش الكتان! يُصنع من نبات الكتان. كان المصريون القدماء يرتدونه كل يوم - حتى أنهم غلفوا المومياوات به.



Nour

My grandma has a linen dress. It's soft, cool, and simple!

جدتي لديها فستان من الكتان. إنه ناعم، ورائع، وبسيط!



Omar

Clay is another interesting one. They made pots, jars, bricks — and small statues and amulets too!

الصلصال (الطين) مادة أخرى مثيرة للاهتمام. كانوا يصنعون منه أواني، برطمانات، طوبًا - وتماثيل صغيرة وتalismans أيضًا!



Nour

Amulets? You mean, like small objects people believed could protect them?

تميمات؟ تقصد، مثل أشياء صغيرة كان الناس يعتقدون أنها تحميهم؟

Exactly! Some were shaped like animals. They used gold and small colorful stones to make jewelry.

بالضبط! بعضها كان على شكل حيوانات. كانوا يستخدمون الذهب والأحجار الملونة الصغيرة لصنع المجوهرات.



Omar

These materials are natural, strong, and useful. That's why they lasted thousands of years. Ancient Egyptian culture is really fascinating!

هذه مواد طبيعية، قوية ومفيدة. لهذا السبب بقيت (دامت) لآلاف السنين. الثقافة المصرية القديمة فعلاً رائعة!



Nour



Read again and answer: SB

- 1 What materials did the Ancient Egyptians use?
- 2 Where did Nour see a picture of a papyrus scroll?

Choose the correct answer: SB

- 1 What is Omar working on?
 - a) A science project
 - b) A math test
 - c) A history project
 - d) A reading assignment
- 2 Which material did the Ancient Egyptians use for writing?
 - a) Linen
 - b) Papyrus
 - c) Clay
 - d) Stone
- 3 What is papyrus described as?
 - a) A kind of cloth
 - b) A golden ornament
 - c) A writing material that lasts long
 - d) A type of stone
- 4 What material is still used today in buildings?
 - a) Clay
 - b) Linen
 - c) Stone
 - d) Papyrus
- 5 What did Ancient Egyptians carve statues from?
 - a) Clay
 - b) Granite
 - c) Gold
 - d) Wood
- 6 What is linen made from?
 - a) Cotton
 - b) Wool
 - c) Flax
 - d) Papyrus



The Main Ideas of the Text:

الأفكار الرئيسية في النص:

- ✓ The Ancient Egyptians used stone, clay, papyrus, linen, wood, and even gold.
استخدم المصريون القدماء الحجر والطين والبردي والكتان والخشب وحتى الذهب.
- ✓ Papyrus could survive an unbelievable long time.
يمكن للبردي أن يدوم لفترة طويلة لا تصدق.
- ✓ Stone is still used today in modern buildings, just like it was for pyramids and temples.
لا يزال الحجر يُستخدم حتى اليوم في المباني الحديثة، كما هو الحال في الأهرامات والمعابد.
- ✓ They carved huge statues from granite.
نحتوا تماثيل ضخمة من الجرانيت.
- ✓ The Ancient Egyptians wore linen every day and wrapped mummies in it.
ارتدوا الكتان يوميًا ولقوا المومياوات به.
- ✓ They made pots, jars, bricks, small statues, and amulets from clay.
صنعوا الأواني والبرطمانات والطوب والتماثيل الصغيرة والتماثيل من الطين.
- ✓ Amulets were small objects people believed could protect them, sometimes shaped like animals.
كانت التماثيل أشياء صغيرة اعتقد الناس أنها تحميهم، وكانت أحيانًا على شكل حيوانات.
- ✓ These materials are natural, strong, and useful, which is why they lasted thousands of years.
هذه المواد طبيعية وقوية ومفيدة، ولهذا السبب دامت آلاف السنين.

✓ Checkpoint Choose the correct answer:

- 1 Gold, clay, and granite are (museums – stones – projects – materials) we can use to make different things.
- 2 The Ancient Egyptians used (clay – papyrus – gold – bricks) to write on. **SB**
- 3 To (wrap – survive – decorate – believe) is to continue to exist for a long time.
- 4 The Ancient Egyptians (read – protected – wore – carved) huge statues from granite.
- 5 My dress is made of (linen – gold – granite – clay). It's very soft.
- 6 My mom likes to wear gold (pots – jars – jewelry – statues).

Practice



Lesson 1

Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)



- 1 Noha is working on the project.
a) English b) math c) science d) history
- 2 It's unbelievable how long that material could
a) survive b) protect c) wrap d) believe
- 3 Noha loves how they carved huge statues from
a) clay b) granite c) linen d) wood
- 4 We still use stone today for
a) photos b) pictures c) clothes d) sculptures

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 To "....." means to make something look nice or beautiful.
a) wrap b) decorate c) use d) survive
- 2 "....." is something that was used to make pots and jars.
a) Flax b) Linen c) Papyrus d) Clay
- 3 Camels can in the desert.
a) survive b) wrap c) carve d) shape
- 4 Linen is a kind of soft
a) stone b) mummy c) material d) statue
- 5 were wrapped in linen in ancient times.
a) Bricks b) Materials c) Mummies d) Mummies
- 6 "....." means very old; from a long time ago.
a) Bad b) Soft c) Strong d) Ancient

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

temples – wood – used – carved

The Ancient Egyptian culture is great. The Ancient Egyptians (1)..... lots of different materials. They used stone, clay, papyrus, linen, (2)....., and even gold. Some materials are still used today. Stone is used in modern buildings. The Ancient Egyptians used it for pyramids and (3)..... . Linen is made from flax. The Ancient Egyptians wore linen every day — and even wrapped mummies in it.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Salma and Omar are talking about their history project. Omar is reading about the materials used by the Ancient Egyptians. They used stone, clay, papyrus, linen, wood, and even gold. Salma saw a papyrus scroll in a museum. Clay was used to make pots, bricks, and even small amulets, which people believed protected them from harm. The Ancient Egyptians also used gold and colorful stones to make jewelry. Many of these materials are still used in modern times because they are strong and useful. Their smart use of materials shows how advanced their culture was.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The general idea of the text is about in Ancient Egypt.
a) pyramids b) materials c) papyrus d) the River Nile
- are made of clay.
a) Pots b) Culture c) Jewelry d) Linen

B Answer the following questions:

- Who does the underlined pronoun "them" refer to?
.....
- What did the Ancient Egyptians use to make jewelry?
.....
- Why are these materials still used in modern times?
.....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

- a picture of – I – a papyrus scroll – a museum – in – saw.
.....
- really – is – Ancient – culture – fascinating – Egyptian!
.....
- Egyptians – clay – made – jars – from – Ancient – and pots.
.....
- huge – granite – from – carved – statues – They.
.....

6 Punctuate the following:

- In egypt, we have many temples that we can visit
.....
- are you working on the history project
.....



Lesson 2



Let's Use Energy Wisely! هيا نستخدم الطاقة بحكمة!

Listen and say:

استمع وقل:

Main vocabulary

solar power	الطاقة الشمسية	pollute	يلوث	solar panels	الألواح الشمسية
harm	يضر / يؤذي	climate	المناخ	protect	يحمي

Extra vocabulary

gas	غاز	endless (adj.)	أبدى (لا نهاية لها)	sunshine	نور الشمس
planet	كوكب	oil	النفط (البترول)	devices	الأجهزة
fridge	ثلاجة	fuel	وقود	climate change	تغير المناخ
actions	أفعال / تصرفات	energy heroes	أبطال الطاقة	unsafe (adj.)	غير آمن

Expressions and Phrases

charge phone	يشحن الهاتف	save electricity	يوفر الكهرباء	turn off	يطفئ
waste energy	يهدر الطاقة	care for	يعتني بـ	make a difference	يصنع فرقاً

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
charge يشحن	charged	harm يؤذي / يضر	harmed
bike يركب الدراجة	biked	waste يهدر / يضيع	wasted
cause يسبب	caused	affect يؤثر على	affected

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
light يضيء / ينيّر	lit	keep يحمي / يحافظ على	kept

Definitions	pollute	to make something dirty or unsafe, especially the air, water, or land أن تجعل شيئاً ما متسخاً أو غير آمن، وخاصة الهواء أو الماء أو الأرض
	use wisely	caring for something so you don't make mistakes الاهتمام بشيء ما حتى لا ترتكب أخطاء
	climate	the usual weather in a place over a long time الطقس المعتاد في مكان ما لفترة طويلة

Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

يهدف هذا السؤال إلى إعطاء الطالب مساحة للتفكير في موضوع الدرس قبل البدء فيه.



Warm up

Why is it important to save energy at home, school, and in the streets?

Energy is something we all need every day—to light our homes, cook, watch TV, and charge our phones. In Egypt, we use electricity, **gas**⁽¹⁾, and **solar power**⁽²⁾. But energy is not **endless**⁽³⁾, so we must use it wisely. Some energy comes from nature, like solar and wind, which are clean and don't **pollute**⁽⁴⁾. Egypt has lots of sunshine, so using more **solar panels**⁽⁵⁾ saves money and helps the planet.



- (1) غاز
(2) الطاقة الشمسية
(3) أبدي (لا نهاية له)
(4) يلوث
(5) ألواح شمسية

Other energy types, like oil and gas, can **harm**⁽⁶⁾ the Earth. We should save energy by **turning off**⁽⁷⁾ lights and **devices**⁽⁸⁾ when not in use, closing the fridge door quickly, and using the **right size**⁽⁹⁾ pot for cooking. Cars and buses use **fuel**⁽¹⁰⁾ which pollutes the air. Walking or biking short distances also saves energy and keeps us healthy.

- (6) يضر
(7) يطفئ
(8) أجهزة
(9) المقاس الصحيح
(10) وقود

Wasting energy **causes**⁽¹¹⁾ **climate change**⁽¹²⁾, which **affects**⁽¹³⁾ animals and their homes. Small daily **actions**⁽¹⁴⁾ can make a big difference. Together, we can protect our country and planet — we should all be energy heroes!

- (11) يسبب
(12) التغير المناخي
(13) يؤثر على
(14) تصرفات/أفعال

Read again and answer: SB

- What types of energy do people use in Egypt?
- Why should we turn off lights and fans when we don't need them?.....
- How can walking or riding a bike help save energy?

The Main Ideas of the Text:

الأفكار الرئيسية في النص:

- Energy is something we all need every day.

الطاقة شيء نحتاجه جميعًا يوميًا.

- Energy is not endless, so we must use it wisely.

الطاقة ليست أبدية، لذا يجب أن نستخدمها بحكمة.

- Some energy comes from nature, like solar and wind, which are clean and don't pollute.

بعض أنواع الطاقة تأتي من الطبيعة، مثل الطاقة الشمسية وطاقة الرياح، وهي طاقة نظيفة وغير ملوثة.

- Other energy types, like oil and gas, can harm the Earth.

أنواع أخرى من الطاقة، مثل النفط والغاز، قد تضر بالأرض.

- We should save energy by turning off lights and devices when not in use.

يجب علينا توفير الطاقة بإطفاء الأنوار والأجهزة عند عدم استخدامها.

- We should close the fridge door quickly, and use the right size pot for cooking.

يجب إغلاق باب الثلاجة بسرعة، واستخدام قدر مناسب للطهي.

- We should walk or bike short distances to save energy and keep us healthy.

يجب علينا المشي أو ركوب الدراجات لمسافات قصيرة لتوفير الطاقة والحفاظ على صحتنا.

- Wasting energy causes climate change, which affects animals and their homes.

يُسبب إهدار الطاقة تغير المناخ، مما يؤثر على الحيوانات ومساكنها.

Take care !

- e.g. We all need energy to **light** our homes.
We should turn off **lights** when not in use.

كلمة (light) قد تأتي اسمًا (noun) أو فعلًا (verb):
فعل بمعنى (يضيء / ينير)
اسم بمعنى (أضواء / أنوار)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: SB

- We use to get energy from the sun.
a) wind turbines b) greenhouses c) fridges d) solar panels
- Gases from cars and buses can the air.
a) pollute b) clean c) charge d) protect
- Don't water when you brush your teeth.
a) use b) harm c) waste d) close
- We must the Earth from pollution.
a) forget b) protect c) use d) leave



Language in Use

Modal Verbs

الأفعال الناقصة

1. must:

We use (must) to say something is very important or a rule.

نستخدم (must) لنقول إن شيئًا ما مهم جدًا أو أنه قاعدة.

... مصدر الفعل (inf.) + must + فاعل subject

e.g. You must turn off the lights to save energy.

2. mustn't:

We use (mustn't) to say something is not allowed.

نستخدم (mustn't) لنقول إن شيئًا ما غير مسموح به.

... مصدر الفعل (inf.) + mustn't + فاعل subject

e.g. You mustn't throw garbage on the ground.

Checkpoint 1. Choose the correct answer:

يهدف هذا التدريب إلى قياس مدى فهمك للقواعد اللغوية.

- 1 You (must – shouldn't – mustn't – can't) wash your hands before eating.
- 2 Students must (brings – brought – bringing – bring) their books to class.
- 3 You (must – mustn't – aren't – can't) listen to the teacher.
- 4 We must (wears – wear – wore – wearing) a seatbelt in the car.
- 5 You (must – shouldn't – mustn't – can't) eat too much fast food. It's unhealthy.
- 6 We (must – shouldn't – mustn't – can't) speak politely to others.

2. Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 I (mustn't) listen to my teacher.
- 2 You must (follows) road signs.
- 3 You must (are) careful while crossing the road.
- 4 You (mustn't) wait for cars to stop before crossing the road.
- 5 You (must) eat in the library.
- 6 We must (finished) our work quickly.

3. should:

We use (should) to give advice or a good idea.

نستخدم (should) لإعطاء النصيحة أو فكرة جيدة.

... مصدر الفعل (inf.) + should + فاعل subject

e.g. You should walk to school if it's close.

4. shouldn't:

We use (shouldn't) to say something is not a good idea.

نستخدم (shouldn't) لنقول إن شيئاً ما ليس فكرة جيدة.

... مصدر الفعل (inf.) + shouldn't + فاعل subject

e.g. You shouldn't waste water when washing your hands.

✓ Checkpoint 1. Write (should / shouldn't) to complete the sentences:

يهدف هذا التدريب إلى قياس مدى فهمك للقواعد اللغوية.

- ① You sleep in class.
- ② We use safe websites.
- ③ If you are sick, you go to the doctor.
- ④ You share your personal information with anyone.
- ⑤ You keep your password secret.

2. Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- ① You (should) go to bed late before school.
- ② We should (eating) more fruits and vegetables.
- ③ He (should) talk during the test.
- ④ Children (shouldn't) help their parents at home.
- ⑤ You shouldn't (plays) in the street.

Quick Practice on Modal Verbs

1 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 You shouldn't (stayed) up late.
- 2 He shouldn't (tells) lies.
- 3 Ali (shouldn't) eat healthy food.
- 4 I should (helping) my friends.
- 5 You (shouldn't) be safe online.
- 6 Children shouldn't (eats) too many sweets.
- 7 Students should (studies) hard.
- 8 We (shouldn't) clean our streets.
- 9 You must (stops) polluting the Earth.
- 10 You (must) drive too quickly.
- 11 You (mustn't) be quiet in the library.
- 12 She mustn't (sleeps) very late.
- 13 You must (to cross) the road at the crosswalk.
- 14 We must (wore) a seatbelt in cars.
- 15 We must (finished) our work quickly.

2 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1 school – must – go – every – to – day – You.

2 eat – shouldn't – too – Children – much – bread.

3 when – is – cross – mustn't – red – the – light – We.

4 talk – Students – test – during – mustn't – the.

5 late – shouldn't – be – They – for – class.



Lesson 2

Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The sun and wind are sources of energy.
a) wasteful b) endless c) beautiful d) harmful
- 2 The is the usual weather in a place over a long time.
a) climate b) panel c) power d) fuel
- 3 Using solar helps save the planet.
a) plants b) power c) types d) actions
- 4 Laptops and cell phones are
a) planets b) differences c) devices d) resources
- 5 “.....” means to make something dirty or unsafe, especially the air, water, or land.
a) Protect b) Change c) Save d) Pollute
- 6 Don’t your device for too long.
a) affect b) cause c) cross d) charge
- 7 make electricity from sunlight. They’re clear and green.
a) Solar panels b) Oils c) Gases d) Climate changes
- 8 To “.....” is to stop something from causing harm to something else.
a) save b) waste c) protect d) pollute

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

sunshine – power – soil – wisely

We all need energy every day to light our homes, cook, charge our phones, and watch TV. In Egypt, we use gas, electricity, and solar (1)..... . But energy is not endless, so we must use it (2)..... . Some energy comes from nature, like wind and solar energy, which are clean and do not pollute the Earth. Egypt has a lot of (3)....., so using more solar panels helps the planet and saves money.

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

- 1 light – homes – need – We – to – our – energy.
- 2 We – save – should – lights – by – energy – turning off.
- 3 door – fridge – close – the – quickly – should – We.
- 4 energy – actions – save – daily – can – Small – help.

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 You (mustn't) eat healthy food every day.
- 2 We (should) play with knives.
- 3 You (must) cross the street when the light is red.
- 4 Children mustn't (is) rude to teachers.
- 5 You should (brushes) your teeth twice a day.
- 6 We (mustn't) wear a uniform at school.
- 7 People (must) throw plastic bottles in the river.
- 8 You mustn't (forgot) your homework.
- 9 You mustn't (touched) electrical wires.
- 10 You should (uses) social media safely.
- 11 We should (are) proud of our country.
- 12 You must (listens) to the teacher carefully.
- 13 You (shouldn't) help your parents at home.
- 14 We shouldn't (slept) late every night.
- 15 Asmaa (shouldn't) ask for help if she needs it.
- 16 You mustn't (running) in the school hall.

SB

SB

SB

SB

5 Punctuate the following:

- 1 In egypt, we use electricity gas, and solar power.
- 2 how can you help save energy

6 Write a text of about (50 - 60) words using the following guiding elements:

"Energy"
endless – solar power – climate change





Lesson 3



Gifts from Under the Ground هدايا من تحت الأرض



Listen and say:

استمع وقل:

Main vocabulary

gold	ذهب	iron	حديد	rock	صخرة
minerals	معادن	oil	النفط (البترول)	natural gas	غاز طبيعي
jewelry	مجوهرات	steel	الفولاذ / الصلب	natural resources	موارد طبيعية

Extra vocabulary

valuable (adj)	قيّم / ثمين	ground	أرض	metals	معادن
deep (adj)	عميق	especially	خصوصاً	Western Desert	الصحراء الغربية
Sinai	سيناء	liquid	سائل	heating	حرارة / تسخين
electricity	كهرباء	lights	إضاءة	shiny (adj)	مشرق / لامع
Eastern Desert	الصحراء الشرقية	soil	تربة	future	مستقبل

Expressions and Phrases

bring money to	يجلب المال	make electricity	يولّد الكهرباء	for everyone	لكل شخص/للجميع
----------------	------------	------------------	----------------	--------------	----------------

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
call يدعى / يسمى	called	use يستخدم	used
contain يحتوي	contained	develop يطور	developed

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
sell يبيع	sold	bring يجلب / يحضر	brought
build يبني	built	grow يزرع	grew

Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

يهدف هذا السؤال إلى إعطاء الطالب مساحة للتفكير في موضوع الدرس قبل البدء فيه.



Warm up

What things come from under the ground?

Egypt has many **valuable**⁽¹⁾ things under the **ground**⁽²⁾. We call these things **minerals**⁽³⁾. They are very important for our country. Egypt has a lot of **oil**⁽⁴⁾, **rocks**⁽⁵⁾ and **metals**⁽⁶⁾. We find oil deep under the ground, especially in the **Western Desert**⁽⁷⁾ and Sinai. Oil is a **black liquid**⁽⁸⁾. Egypt sells oil to other countries. This brings money to Egypt. Egypt also has a lot of **natural gas**⁽⁹⁾ that we can use for cooking, heating, and making **electricity**⁽¹⁰⁾ for lights and TVs.



Gold is a beautiful, yellow, shiny metal. Long ago, Ancient Egyptians used gold to make beautiful **jewelry**⁽¹¹⁾ for kings and queens. Today, Egypt still finds gold in the **Eastern Desert**⁽¹²⁾. Also, Egypt has iron in the Eastern Desert. Iron is a strong metal. We use iron to make steel. We use it to build big buildings and cars.

The **soil**⁽¹³⁾ in Egypt contains different kinds of minerals which help plants grow big and strong.

These **natural resources**⁽¹⁴⁾ help Egypt grow and develop. By using these minerals wisely, Egypt can build a strong future for everyone.

- | | |
|------|-----------------|
| (1) | قيّم |
| (2) | أرض |
| (3) | معادن |
| (4) | النفط (البترول) |
| (5) | صخور |
| (6) | معادن |
| (7) | الصحراء الغربية |
| (8) | سائل أسود |
| (9) | غاز طبيعي |
| (10) | كهرباء |
| (11) | مجوهرات |
| (12) | الصحراء الشرقية |
| (13) | تربة |
| (14) | موارد طبيعية |

Read again and answer: SB

- What do we call the valuable things under the ground in Egypt?
- Where do we find oil in Egypt?
- Why are natural resources important for Egypt?

Read and write T (True) or F (False): SB

- ① Oil is found in the air. ()
- ② Egypt sells oil to other countries. ()
- ③ Natural gas helps heat food. ()
- ④ The Ancient Egyptians made jewelry from natural gas. ()
- ⑥ Steel is used for cars and buildings. ()



The Main Ideas of the Text:

الأفكار الرئيسية في النص:

- ✓ Egypt has many valuable things under the ground. These are called minerals.
تمتلك مصر أشياء ثمينة كثيرة تحت الأرض، وتُسمى هذه الأشياء "معادن".
- ✓ We find oil, rocks, and metals deep underground in the Western Desert and Sinai.
نجد البترول والصخور والمعادن عميقًا تحت الأرض في الصحراء الغربية وسيناء.
- ✓ Oil and natural gas bring money to Egypt and help in cooking, heating, and making electricity.
البترول والغاز الطبيعي يجلبان المال لمصر، ويساعدان في الطهي والتدفئة وتوليد الكهرباء.
- ✓ Gold is a shiny metal. The Ancient Egyptians used it to make jewelry.
الذهب معدن لامع. استخدمه المصريون القدماء لصنع المجوهرات.
- ✓ Egypt also has iron in the Eastern Desert. We use iron to make steel.
يوجد أيضًا الحديد في صحراء مصر الشرقية. نستخدم الحديد لصنع الفولاذ.
- ✓ Steel is used to build big buildings and cars.
يُستخدم الفولاذ لبناء المباني الكبيرة والسيارات.
- ✓ The soil in Egypt contains minerals that help plants grow big and strong.
تحتوي التربة في مصر على معادن تساعد النباتات على النمو بشكل قوى وكبير.
- ✓ Natural resources help Egypt grow and build a strong future.
الموارد الطبيعية تساعد مصر على النمو وبناء مستقبل قوى.



Pronunciation



Listen and say:

استمع وقل:

/u:/ – Long “oo”

When you see “oo” in a word, you can say /u:/, as in spoon, moon, school, ...)

عندما ترى “oo” في كلمة ما، يمكنك أن تقول /u:/، كما (school, moon, spoon).

/ʊ/ – Short “oo”

We can also pronounce “oo” as a short sound, /ʊ/, as in words like (wood, book, look, good)

يمكننا أيضًا نطق “oo” كصوت قصير /ʊ/، كما في كلمات مثل (wood, book, look, good)

/u:/



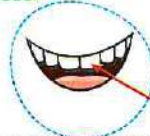
spoon

ملعقة



moon

قمر



tooth

سنة



food

طعام

/ʊ/



wood

خشب



book

كتاب



foot

قدم



good

جيد

Listen and circle the word that has the /ʊ/ sound: SB

1 zoo / good / boot

2 wood / group / moon

3 moon / tooth / foot

Listen and circle the word that has the /u:/ sound: SB

1 foot / food / good

2 good / spoon / look

3 hook / school / book



Lesson 3

Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The in Egypt helps plants grow.
a) meal b) building c) jewelry d) soil
- 2 Ancient Egyptians used gold to make
a) jewelry b) books c) clothes d) shoes
- 3 We get oil and gas from under the
a) desk b) ground c) sky d) sea
- 4 is used to make buildings and cars.
a) Iron b) Jewelry c) Liquid d) Cloth
- 5 Gold is a metal.
a) dark b) shiny c) soft d) black
- 6 is made from iron.
a) Gold b) Steel c) Desert d) Sand
- 7 The black liquid we use for energy is called
a) gas b) water c) oil d) juice
- 8 are things like oil, gas, and minerals that help a country grow.
a) Animals b) Clothes c) Natural resources d) Computers
- 9 Something that is very important or special is called
a) deep b) valuable c) ugly d) bored
- 10 Gas used in cooking and heating is called
a) natural gas b) oxygen c) perfume d) steam

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

gas – metal – Steel – buildings

Egypt has a lot of iron in the Eastern Desert. Iron is a strong (1)..... We use it to make steel, which is used in many big (2)..... around the country. (3)..... helps us build bridges, towers, and cars that last a long time and stay safe in all kinds of weather.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

Salma is doing a science project about natural resources in Egypt. She reads about oil, natural gas, and metals. She learns that oil is found in the Western Desert and Sinai. Natural gas is used for cooking and heating. Gold and iron are also important metals. Gold is used to make jewelry, and iron is used in building. Salma draws a map to show where we can find them. She is proud that Egypt has many useful things under the ground. She enjoys learning about science.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1** The general idea of the text is about in Egypt.
a) meals b) natural resources
c) teachers d) school trips
- 2** Gold is used to make
a) roads b) coins c) bricks d) jewelry

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 What project is Salma doing?
- 4 Where is oil found in Egypt?
- 5 What does Salma draw to show the resources?

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

- 1 help – minerals – country – The – our – grow.
- 2 use – steel – We – to – iron – make.
- 3 oil – Egypt – sells – countries – to – other.
- 4 natural – Egypt – resources – has – many.
- 5 brings – Egypt – oil – selling – money – from.

5 Punctuate the following:

- 1 why are natural resources important for Egypt
- 2 Egypt can build a strong future for everyone



Lessons 4 and 5

Man-Made Resources

موارد من صنع الانسان



Listen and say:

استمع وقل:

Main vocabulary

The High Dam	السد العالي	huge (adj.)	ضخم	flooding	فيضان
crops	محاصيل	irrigation	الري	electricity	كهرباء

Extra vocabulary

facts	حقائق	man-made (adj.)	من صنع الانسان	bottles	زجاجات
school supplies	أدوات مدرسية	glass	زجاج	sand	رمل
clay	طين	mirrors	مرايا	accurate (adj.)	دقيق / صحيح
factory	مصنع	tips	نصائح	lake	بحيرة
drought	جفاف	grains	حبوب	low (adj.)	منخفض

Expressions and Phrases

do a research project about	يقوم بمشروع بحث عن	(be) made from	مصنوع من	processed in	يُعالج / يُصنع في
such as	مثل	instead of	بدلاً من	It took ten years to	استغرق عشر سنوات لـ...

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
search	يبحث	searched	يبحث
create	يُنشئ / يبتكر	created	يخلق
recycle	يُعيد تدوير	recycled	يُجفف
solve	يحلّ	solved	يُعيد استخدام
explain	يشرح/يفسر	explained	يشارك
cross	يُعبّر	crossed	يُفيض
		flood	flooded

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

draw	يُرسّم	drew	يُرسل
		send	sent



Writing

Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

Man-Made Resources

Hi! I'm Omar, and I'm doing a **research project**⁽¹⁾ about **man-made resources**⁽²⁾ for my English class. I started by reading a book and searching the internet with my dad. I wrote **facts**⁽³⁾ in my notebook and printed pictures to help explain.



- (1) مشروع بحث
(2) موارد من صنع الإنسان
(3) حقائق

Man-made resources are things people create using natural materials. For example, plastic is made from oil and used for bottles, toys, and school supplies. Glass is made from **sand**⁽⁴⁾ and used in windows, mirrors, and cups. One interesting resource I learned about is bricks, made by mixing **clay**⁽⁵⁾ and water, then dried or baked. They are used to build houses, schools, and walls.



- (4) رمل
(5) طين
(6) الورق
(7) يُعالج / يُصنع في
(8) جرائد / صحف
(9) نصوص
(10) معلومات دقيقة

Paper⁽⁶⁾ is made from trees and **processed**⁽⁷⁾ in factories for writing and reading. People also recycle paper to make notebooks and **newspapers**⁽⁸⁾.

To complete my project, I drew pictures of each resource and shared helpful **tips**⁽⁹⁾, such as recycling plastic, reusing paper, and using cloth bags instead of plastic ones. Doing research was an important part of my work because it helped me understand new ideas, find **accurate information**⁽¹⁰⁾, and learn more about the world around me.

Read again and answer: SB

- What project did Omar work on?
- Where did Omar find information for his research?
- Which man-made material did Omar include in his project?



Tip!

Here are some tips for doing research:

إليك بعض النصائح لإعداد بحث:

Choose your topic

اختر موضوع البحث

Ask simple questions: What is it?, Where does it come from?, etc.

اطرح أسئلة بسيطة، مثل: ما هو؟ من أين يأتي؟ وغيرها.

Use different sources like: the school book, search safe websites, or ask an adult.

استخدم مصادر مختلفة مثل: كتاب المدرسة، مواقع آمنة على الإنترنت، أو اسأل شخصًا بالغًا.

Write short notes in your own words.

اكتب ملاحظات قصيرة بكلماتك الخاصة.

Organize your ideas.

نظم أفكارك.

Add pictures or drawings.

أضف صورًا أو رسومات.

Check spelling, grammar, and punctuation mistakes.

راجع الأخطاء في الإملاء والقواعد وعلامات الترقيم.



The Main Ideas of the Text:

الأفكار الرئيسية في النص:

- ✓ Omar is doing a research project about man-made resources.

عمر يقوم بمشروع بحثي عن الموارد التي يصنعها الإنسان.

- ✓ He read a book and searched the internet with his dad.

قرأ كتابًا وبحث على الإنترنت مع والده.

- ✓ Omar wrote facts in his notebook and used printed pictures.

كتب عمر حقائق في دفتره واستخدم صورًا مطبوعة.

- ✓ People make man-made resources using natural materials.

يصنع الناس الموارد الصناعية باستخدام مواد طبيعية.

- ✓ Plastic is made from oil and is used for bottles, toys, and school supplies.

يُصنع البلاستيك من النفط ويُستخدم في الزجاجات والألعاب والأدوات المدرسية.

- ✓ Glass is made from sand and is used in mirrors and windows.

يُصنع الزجاج من الرمل ويُستخدم في المرايا والنوافذ.

- ✓ Bricks are made from clay and water. They are used to build houses, schools, and walls.

يُصنع الطوب من الطين والماء. ويُستخدم لبناء المنازل والمدارس والجدران.

- ✓ Paper is made from trees and is processed in factories.

يُصنع الورق من الأشجار ويُعالج في المصانع.

- ✓ Omar shared helpful tips, like recycling plastic and reusing paper.

شارك عمر نصائح مفيدة، مثل إعادة تدوير البلاستيك وإعادة استخدام الورق.



Think and Create

The High Dam السد العالي

What is the High Dam?

The High Dam is a huge **wall**⁽¹⁾ that crosses the Nile River in Aswan, Egypt. It **holds**⁽²⁾ a large lake called Lake Nasser. The dam stops the river from **flooding**⁽³⁾ and keeps water for people to use during the year.



- (1) جدار/حائط
(2) يحجز
(3) فيضان

Why did Egyptians build it?

They built the High Dam to solve problems with flooding and **drought**⁽⁴⁾. They also wanted to give people clean **electricity**⁽⁵⁾ and help farmers grow more **crops**⁽⁶⁾ with regular water.

When did Egyptians build it?

Egyptians built the High Dam in Aswan between 1960 and 1970. It was **officially**⁽⁷⁾ completed and opened in 1970. It took ten years to build. Now, it helps Egypt with water and electricity every day.

- (4) جفاف
(5) كهرباء
(6) محاصيل
(7) رسميًا

How does The High Dam help people?

The High Dam helps people in many ways. Farmers use the water for **irrigation**⁽⁸⁾, so they can grow vegetables, fruits, and **grains**⁽⁹⁾ all year. The dam also sends electricity to homes, schools, hospitals, and factories across Egypt. It protects cities from dangerous floods, and it makes sure people have water even when the river is **low**⁽¹⁰⁾.

- (8) الري
(9) حبوب
(10) منخفض

To write a good fact file, you should follow these steps:

Choose your topic اختر موضوع البحث	The topic in the text is "The High Dam".
Ask and answer questions. أطرح الأسئلة والإجابة	What is the High Dam? It is a huge wall that crosses the Nile River.
Find key facts. ابحث عن الحقائق الأساسية أو المعلومات المهمة .	It sends electricity to homes and factories.
Write short sentences. اكتب جمل قصيرة	The dam helps people in many ways.
Add a title and subheadings. أضف عنوانًا رئيسيًا وعناوين فرعية	Title: The High Dam Subheadings: What is it?, Why was it built?, When was it built?, How does it help?
Include pictures or drawings. تضمن الصور أو الرسومات	
Check spelling and grammar. التحقق من الإملاء والقواعد النحوية	The text uses correct spelling and past tense verbs like "helped", "built", and "stopped".

The Main Ideas of the Text:

الأفكار الرئيسية في النص:

- ✓ The High Dam is a huge wall in Aswan. It took ten years to build.
السد العالي جدار ضخم في أسوان. استغرق بناؤه عشر سنوات.
- ✓ It crosses the Nile River and holds a big lake called Lake Nasser.
يعبر نهر النيل ويحجز بحيرة كبيرة تُسمى بحيرة ناصر.
- ✓ The dam helps stop the river from flooding.
يساعد السد في منع فيضان النهر.
- ✓ It keeps water for people to use during the year.
يحفظ بالمياه ليستخدمها الناس طوال العام.
- ✓ People built the dam to stop floods and drought.
بنى الناس السد لمنع الفيضانات والجفاف.
- ✓ The High Dam helps people in many ways.
السد العالي يساعد الناس بطرق كثيرة.
- ✓ Farmers use the water for irrigation, so they can grow vegetables and fruits.
يستخدم المزارعون المياه للري ليزرعوا الخضراوات والفواكه.
- ✓ It sends electricity to homes, schools, hospitals, and factories.
يرسل الكهرباء إلى البيوت والمدارس والمستشفيات والمصانع.



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Paper is processed in a
a) house b) school c) factory d) hospital
- 2 The High Dam helps protect Egypt from
a) sandstorms b) flooding c) snow d) fires
- 3 Glass is made from
a) water b) plastic c) sand d) oil
- 4 The High Dam sends to homes and hospitals.
a) floods b) electricity c) grains d) droughts
- 5 A/An system is used to grow crops.
a) electricity b) factory c) irrigation d) bottle
- 6 Bottles can be made from
a) iron b) glass c) wood d) rock
- 7 Farmers grow, such as fruits and vegetables.
a) medicine b) crops c) grains d) floods
- 8 Facts must be
a) boring b) long c) accurate d) dry
- 9 A happens when there is no water for a long time.
a) wind b) drought c) flood d) desert

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

plastic – clothes – recycle – bricks

My name is Lina. I worked on a science project about man-made materials. I learned that (1)..... is made from oil and used to make bottles and bags. My favorite part was learning how people (2)..... paper and use it again. I also found out that (3)..... are made from clay and used to build houses and schools. I drew pictures and wrote facts in my notebook.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

The High Dam is a very big wall that was built across the Nile River in Aswan, Egypt. They started building it in 1960 and finished it in 1970. The dam holds a huge lake called Lake Nasser. The High Dam stops the Nile from flooding and keeps water for people to use all year. It also sends electricity to homes, schools, hospitals, and factories in Egypt. The High Dam helps farmers because it gives them water regularly to grow fruits, vegetables, and grains. It protects Egypt from both floods and drought.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The High Dam was built in
a) Cairo b) Luxor c) Aswan d) Alexandria
- The underlined word "protects" means
a) prints b) saves c) grows d) builds

B Answer the following questions:

- How long did it take to build the High Dam?
.....

- Why did Egyptians build the High Dam?
.....

- How does the High Dam help farmers? 
.....

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

- used – are – Bricks – schools – to – build.
.....

- wrote – my – notebook – facts – I – in.
.....

- dam – helps – The – people – many – in – ways.
.....

5 Write a text of about (50 - 60) words using the following guiding elements:

"The High Dam"
electricity – crops – flooding

.....
.....
.....



Unit 4

REVIEW



يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من مراجعة أهم الأجزاء التي وردت بالوحدة.

Lesson (1)

granite	جرايت	ancient (adj.)	قديم / أثري
clay	طين/صلصال	modern (adj.)	حديث
temple	معبد	gold	ذهب
survive	ينجو / يدوم	bricks	طوب
wrapped	لف / غلف	material	مواد/خامات
colored stones	أحجار ملونة	decorate	يزين
papyrus	نبات البردي	culture	ثقافة
amulet	تميمة		

Lesson (2)

solar power	الطاقة الشمسية	gas	غاز
harm	يضر/يؤذي	sunshine	نور الشمس
pollute	يلوث	oil	النفط (البترول)
climate	المناخ	fridge	ثلاجة
solar panels	الألواح الشمسية	climate change	تغير المناخ
protect	يحمي	fuel	وقود

Lesson (3)

gold	ذهب	iron	حديد
rock	صخرة	minerals	معادن
oil	النفط (البترول)	natural gas	غاز طبيعي
jewelry	مجوهرات	steel	الفولاذ / الصلب
natural resources	موارد طبيعية	valuable	قيم
ground	أرض	metals	معادن

Lessons (4 and 5)

The High Dam	السد العالي	drought	جفاف
crops	محاصيل	man-made	من صنع الإنسان
huge (adj)	ضخم	glass	زجاج
irrigation	الري	mirrors	مرايا
flooding	فيضان	tips	نصائح
electricity	كهرباء	grains	حبوب

Modal Verbs: must / mustn't / should / shouldn't

نستخدم must / mustn't / should / shouldn't للتعبير عن شيء من الضروري فعله، ويأت بعدهم دائمًا مصدر الفعل (inf).

Subject (فاعل) + must + inf. (الفعل في المصدر) ...

e.g. I must water the plants every day.

Subject (فاعل) + mustn't + inf. (الفعل في المصدر) ...

e.g. You mustn't copy other people's homework.

Subject (فاعل) + should + inf. (الفعل في المصدر) ...

e.g. We should brush our teeth every night.

Subject (فاعل) + shouldn't + inf. (الفعل في المصدر) ...

e.g. They shouldn't be late for school.

Unit 4

CHECK YOUR VOCABULARY



تأكد من حفظك لكلمات الدروس قبل البدء في إجابة اختبار الوحدة.

Lesson 1

الكلمة بالعربية	الكلمة بالإنجليزية
linen	نبات البردي
decorate	ثقافة
material	معبد
colored stones	طوب
clay	حديث

Lesson 2

devices	يلوث
planet	يحمي
unsafe	ألواح الطاقة الشمسية
fridge	المناخ
harm	وقود

Lesson 3

gold	غاز طبيعي
iron	مجوهرات
rock	موارد طبيعية
oil	الصلب / الفولاذ
ground	عميق

Lessons 4 and 5

The High Dam	فيضان
irrigation	كهرياء
factory	ضخم
grains	محاصيل

يهدف هذا التدريب إلى قياس مدى حفظ الطالب لتصريفات الأفعال.

Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Present

flood
send

Past

brought

Present

dry
sell

Past

searched

wasted

carve

light
affect

”لتسميع كلمات أكثر خاصة بهذه الوحدة .. اذهب إلى كراسة التسميع آخر الكتاب“



لكى تتمكن من كتابة الموضوعات بشكل مميز، اتبع هذه الخطوات.

How to write about energy resources:

- o Energy is something we all need every day.
- o We use it to + استخدامات الطاقة.
- o Some energy comes from nature like + مصادر الطاقة المتجددة.
- o They are + مميزات الطاقة المتجددة.
- o Other energy types are + مصادر الطاقة غير المتجددة.
- o They can + عيوب مصادر الطاقة غير المتجددة.

"Energy resources"

Energy is something we all need every day. We use it to light our homes, cook, watch TV, and charge our phones. Some energy comes from nature like, solar and wind energy. They are clean and don't pollute the environment. Other energy resources are oil and gas. They can harm the Earth.

How to write a research about man-made resources:

- | | |
|--|-------------------------------------|
| o Choose a topic. | اختر موضوعًا. |
| o Use different resources. | استخدم مصادر مختلفة. |
| o Write short notes in your own words. | اكتب ملاحظات قصيرة بأسلوبك. |
| o Organize your ideas. | رتب أفكارك. |
| o Add pictures or drawings. | أضف صورًا أو رسومات. |
| o Check spelling and grammar. | تحقق من الأخطاء الإملائية واللغوية. |

"A research about man-made resources"

I'm doing a research project about man-made resources for my English class. Man-made resources are things people create using natural materials. For example, plastic is made from oil and used for bottles. Paper is made from trees and processed in factories for writing and reading. Doing research is an important part of my work because it helps me understand new ideas.

يتضمن هذا الجزء أهم الأسئلة التي وردت بكتاب الوزارة.

1 Read, think and match:

- | | |
|------------|---|
| 1 material | a. very old; from a long time ago |
| 2 survive | b. from recent times; not old |
| 3 ancient | c. something used to make things |
| 4 decorate | d. covered something by putting material or cloth around it |
| 5 wrapped | e. to make something look nice or beautiful |
| 6 modern | f. continue to exist for a long time |

2 Read and complete using the words in the box:

linen - stones - temples - papyrus - granite

- 1 Ancient Egyptians used to wrap mummies.
- 2 We use colored to make beautiful jewelry.
- 3 Ancient Egyptians carved huge statues from
- 4 In Egypt, we have many that we can visit.
- 5 The Ancient Egyptians used to write on.

3 Complete the following sentences with (must/mustn't):

- 1 You cross the street when the light is red.
- 2 We wear a uniform at school.
- 3 You touch electrical wires.
- 4 You listen to the teacher carefully.



Listening

4

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

للإجابة راجع نص الإستماع آخر الكتاب

- We need to light our homes.
a) food b) energy c) gas d) wind
- Solar energy comes from the
a) sun b) gas c) wind d) electricity
- Energy from wind is
a) clear b) dirty c) bad d) clean
- Using more solar panels saves and helps the planet.
a) honey b) water c) money d) sun



Reading

1.5

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The Ancient Egyptians used to wrap mummies.
a) granite b) linen c) papyrus d) paper
- We use to make pots.
a) cotton b) clay c) stones d) papyrus
- Natural gas helps us make
a) water b) books c) electricity d) paper

1.5

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

flooding – crops – drought – dams

The High Dam is a huge wall that crosses the Nile River in Aswan, Egypt. It holds a large lake called Lake Nasser. The dam stops the river from (1)..... and keeps water for people to use during the year. They built the High Dam to solve problems with flooding and (2)..... They also wanted to give people clean electricity and help farmers grow more (3)..... with regular water.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

7

I'm Omar, and I'm doing a research project about man-made resources for my English class. I started by reading a book and searching the internet with my dad. I wrote facts in my notebook and printed pictures to help explain. Man-made resources are things people create using natural materials. For example, plastic is made from oil and used for bottles, toys, and school supplies. Glass is made from sand and used in windows, mirrors, and cups. One interesting resource I learned about is bricks, which are made by mixing clay and water, then dried or baked. They are used to build houses, schools, and walls.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Omar is doing a research project about
a) English b) the internet c) glass d) man-made resources
- are made by mixing clay and water.
a) Windows b) Glasses c) Bricks d) Bottles

B Answer the following questions:

- What are bricks used for?
- What is glass made from?
- Summarize the text in two sentences.



Writing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1

- must – planet – We – keep – clean – our.
- shouldn't – You – late – go – school – to.

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

4

- I (shouldn't) take short showers.
- You mustn't (leaves) the lights on when you go out.

7 Punctuate the following:

4

- Egyptians built the high Dam in aswan.
- paper is made from trees

8 Write a text of about (50 - 60) words using the following guiding elements:

7

"Energy resources"
solar – nature – pollute





Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4

للإجابة راجع نص الإستماع آخر الكتاب

- 1 Egypt has many natural resources like oil, gas, gold, and
a) window b) iron c) table d) air
- 2 We find them under the
a) sea b) sky c) beach d) ground
- 3 Gold is used to make
a) buildings b) energy c) jewelry d) food
- 4 These resources help Egypt grow and become a country.
a) bad b) strong c) weak d) funny



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1.5

- 1 We use to build walls.
a) jewelry b) papyrus c) gold d) bricks
- 2 The jewelry is usually made of
a) plastic b) gold c) wood d) paper
- 2 Pollution our planet.
a) waters b) protects c) takes d) harms

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

1.5

pollute – clean – panels – endless

Energy is something we all need every day — to light our homes, cook, watch TV, and charge our phones. In Egypt, we use electricity, gas, and solar power. But energy is not (1)....., so we must use it wisely. Some energy comes from nature, like solar and wind energy, which are clean and don't (2)..... our Earth. Egypt has lots of sunshine, so using more solar (3)..... saves money and helps the planet.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

7

The High Dam is a huge wall that crosses the Nile River in Aswan, Egypt. It holds a large lake called Lake Nasser. The dam stops the river from flooding and keeps water for people to use during the year. They built the High Dam to solve problems with flooding and drought. They also wanted to give people clean electricity and help farmers grow more crops with regular water. Egyptians built the High Dam in Aswan. It was officially completed and opened in 1970. It took ten years to build. Now, it helps Egypt with water and electricity every day.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The High Dam holds a large lake called Lake
a) High b) Nasser c) Egypt d) Nader
- They also wanted to give people electricity.
a) unsafe b) low c) poor d) clean

B Answer the following questions:

- Where is the High Dam?
- How does the High Dam help farmers?
- Summarize the text in two sentences.



Writing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1

1 find – the – under – We – deep – oil – ground.

2 pollution – protect – We – from – must – the Earth.

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

4

1 Ali should (does) a lot of research first.

2 We (mustn't) turn off the lights when we leave a room.

7 Punctuate the following:

4

1 Don't waste water

2 what materials did the Ancient Egyptians use

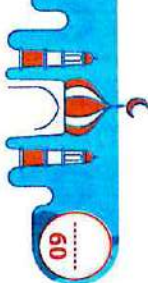
8 Write a text of about (50 - 60) words using the following guiding elements:

7

"Research about man-made resources"

natural – glass – paper





A. Language Functions

1 Read and complete the dialog:

granite – materials – sculptures – scroll – survive

Mona : Hey, Omar! Are you working on the history project?

Sara : Yes! I'm reading about (1) _____ the Ancient Egyptians used.

Mona : That's amazing! I saw a picture of a papyrus (2) _____ in a museum.

Sara : There are a lot of things you can see there.

Mona : It's unbelievable how long that material could (3) _____.

Sara : I know! Some materials are still used today.

Mona : And statues! I love how they carved huge statues from (4) _____.

Sara : We still use stone today for (5) _____ and buildings.

B. Vocabulary and Structures

2 Circle the odd word and replace it with a correct one:

- | | | | | | |
|---|-----------|---------|-----------|---------|-------|
| 1 | powerful | careful | wonderful | happily | ..... |
| 2 | pulled | hold | put | took | ..... |
| 3 | quickly | happy | sadly | slowly | ..... |
| 4 | unhealthy | unkind | untrue | under | ..... |
| 5 | carve | wrap | shape | wore | ..... |

3 Choose the correct answer:

- We can see (roins – mummies – animals), statues, and scrolls at the museum.
- When there is no water, we call it (drought – irrigation – flooding).
- People (damage – carve – decorate) houses and streets in Ramadan.
- We must turn (into – off – on) lights to save energy.
- The (climate – future – electricity) in Aswan is usually very hot.
- You (mustn't – must – shouldn't) drive fast if the traffic light is yellow.
- You (must – should – mustn't) talk during the test. It's against the rules.
- It's raining. You (mustn't – should – shouldn't) take an umbrella.
- You (shouldn't – should – must) drive too fast. It's dangerous.
- You look tired. You (mustn't – shouldn't – should) get some rest.

C. Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following passage, then answer the following questions:

Kareem is learning about minerals in science class. He finds that Egypt has many valuable things under the ground, like oil, natural gas, gold, and iron. Oil is found deep under the land and used to make fuel. Gold is shiny and used in jewelry. Iron is strong and used in buildings and cars. Kareem learns that using these minerals helps Egypt grow. He wants to visit a museum to learn more. He tells his family how important these things are to our country.

A Answer the following questions:

- What does Kareem find under the ground in Egypt?
- What is gold used for?
- Why does Kareem want to visit a museum?

B Choose the correct answer:

- Kareem is learning about (farming – deserts – minerals).
- Iron is used in (food – clothes – buildings).

D. Writing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

- fuel – the – air – which – Cars – pollutes – use.
- everyone – for – Egypt – build – can – future – a strong.
- door – the – fridge – quickly – should – close – We.
- time – your – waste – You – mustn't.
- causes – climate – change – Wasting – energy.

6 Write a text of FIVE (5) sentences using the following guiding elements:

"The High Dam"

huge – lake – flooding – electricity – farmers

Unit 3

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 A/An helps people in emergencies like accidents.
a) mechanic b) tailor c) paramedic d) architect
- 2 The man went to the to get his car fixed.
a) community b) tailor c) mechanic d) desert
- 3 The rose had soft red that sparkled in the sun.
a) petals b) creatures c) seasons d) vehicles
- 4 A/An is someone who designs buildings.
a) street cleaner b) engineer c) architect d) delivery person
- 5 The bird can at the cactus to drink water.
a) control b) sparkle c) peck d) ride
- 6 The desert was very hot and, with little water.
a) refreshed b) dry c) weak d) noisy
- 7 The girl felt when she saw her mistake.
a) embarrassed b) refreshed c) proud d) pleasant
- 8 A keeps the streets clean for the whole community.
a) delivery person b) street cleaner
c) creature d) tailor
- 9 The rose looked beautiful, but the cactus had sharp
a) petals b) vehicles c) thorns d) seasons
- 10 After drinking water from the cactus, the bird felt
a) embarrassed b) unpleasant c) refreshed d) noisy

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

A

emergencies – research – scientist – sharp

Today, we're talking about Dr. Mostafa El-Sayed. He is a famous Egyptian (1)..... He studied at Ain Shams University. He became a top expert in chemistry and nanoscience. He did important (2)..... about tiny gold particles. These particles can help doctors in some (3)..... His ideas made the whole country feel proud. He showed that science can help people and save lives.

B

thorns – petals – unpleasant – vehicles

In the desert, a little girl saw a beautiful rose with soft red (1)..... and a dry green cactus. She thought the cactus was (2)..... because it wasn't colorful, and it didn't sparkle. Also, it had sharp (3)..... Then, a thirsty bird came and started to peck at the cactus to drink. At that time, the girl learned not to judge others by how they look.

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1 vehicles – fix – mechanic – The – can – broken.

2 dry – live – deserts – in – cactus – A – can.

3 the – be – want – I – an – future – to – architect – in.

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) in the brackets:

1 She(able) speak to the delivery person.

2 I(can't) bring my bike to the park. It's cool today.

3(We can) help the street cleaner this afternoon?

4 They(not can) fix broken vehicles without tools.

5 I am(able) draw beautiful flowers.

6 My sister(can't) make posters for the event. It's easy.

7 The bird(can't) peck at the cactus.

8 A:(Can't) I go to the club with Amir? B: OK.

Unit 4**1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**

1 Ancient Egyptians used to write and make scrolls.

a) granite b) papyrus c) gold d) bricks

2 We must use energy, so we don't waste it.

a) wisely b) happily c) finally d) magnetically

3 The pyramid was built with large blocks of

a) pottery b) clay c) granite d) linen

4 People in ancient times used to make pots.

a) gold b) papyrus c) clay d) solar panels

5 The metal used to make crowns for kings and queens is

a) steel b) rock c) iron d) gold

6 Solar power doesn't the air like fuel does.

a) protect b) attract c) decorate d) pollute

7 We use to make clean energy from sunlight.

a) climate b) bricks c) solar panels d) amulets

- 8 This amulet necklace was found in an ancient
 a) mall b) company c) station d) temple
- 9 The desert animals must find ways to
 a) survive b) protect c) decorate d) pollute
- 10 Gold and silver are expensive They decorate our hands.
 a) bricks b) temples c) stones d) materials

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

A

materials – linen – pollute – climate

In ancient times, people used natural (1)..... such as clay, gold, and papyrus to build and create useful items. They made clothes from (2)..... and decorated their homes with beautiful designs. Today, we still use some of these ideas. We try not to (3)..... the air. We use solar panels to get clean energy from the sun to protect our planet.

B

plastic – jewelry – queens – shiny

Gold is a very valuable metal found in Egypt. It is yellow and (1)..... Ancient Egyptians used it to make beautiful (2)..... for kings and (3)..... Today, Egypt still finds gold in the Eastern Desert and uses it in art, trade, and decorations.

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1 solar – use – We – should – panels – energy – to save.

2 are – important – Natural – for – resources – Egypt.

3 linen – used – mummies – Egyptians – wrap – to – Ancient.

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) in the brackets:

- 1 You (shouldn't) turn off the lights when you leave.
 2 We (must) touch electrical wires.
 3 People (shouldn't) recycle old paper to help the Earth.
 4 (Mustn't you) throw trash in the Nile River.
 5 They (shouldn't) use solar panels to save energy.
 6 (Shouldn't people) plant more trees in deserts.
 7 We mustn't (to touch) ancient artifacts in museums.
 8 They (mustn't) protect animals from climate change.

Model 1

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Electricity is used for heating and
 a) gold b) jewelry c) lights d) iron
- 2 The cactus stored water to survive the desert.
 a) noisy b) dry c) crowded d) refreshed
- 3 Egyptians used to make jewelry and decorations.
 a) clay b) linen c) solar power d) gold
- 4 Thorns on a cactus are to protect it.
 a) sharp b) proud c) weak d) unpleasant

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

help – engineers – traffic officer – tailor

We shouldn't forget our great community builders who work together to make things better. A (1)..... helps people cross the road. Water resources (2)..... make sure people get clean water in their homes and schools. A paramedic responds to emergencies, while street cleaners help keep our neighborhoods tidy. We should all (3)..... to make our country strong. We should also protect our community from pollution.

3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 I (not can) swim in the pool. I feel embarrassed when I go with my friends.
- 2 You (must) throw rubbish on the ground.

Model 2

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 energy comes from the sun and doesn't pollute the Earth.
a) Solar b) Granite c) Ancient d) Modern
- 2 A/An helps transport goods to homes and stores.
a) paramedic b) delivery person c) architect d) street cleaner
- 3 My father got thousands of to build our house.
a) vehicles b) bottles c) mechanics d) bricks
- 4 The rose felt very because every desert creature admired her.
a) weak b) embarrassed c) proud d) unpleasant

2 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences

- 1 eat – class – I – the – Can – in?
.....
- 2 drank – from inside – water – cactus – The bird – the.
.....
- 3 some – water – Could – give me – you?
.....

3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 Mazen should (cleaning) his hands before eating.
- 2 Students (mustn't wear) a uniform at school.
- 3 You should (eats) healthy food.
- 4 The driver (mustn't) follow the traffic lights.

Khadeeja : Hi Maria! What are you doing?

Maria : Hi Khadeeja! I'm making a (1)..... about saving energy.

Khadeeja : That's a great idea! My mom always tells me we must use energy wisely.

Maria : Sure. Do you know that wasting energy can (2)..... the Earth?

Khadeeja : Yes, and wasting energy causes (3)..... change, which affects animals! We should try to walk or ride our bikes for short distances instead of using cars.

Maria : Exactly! And Egypt has so much sunshine, so using more (4)..... panels is a great way to save money and helps the planet.

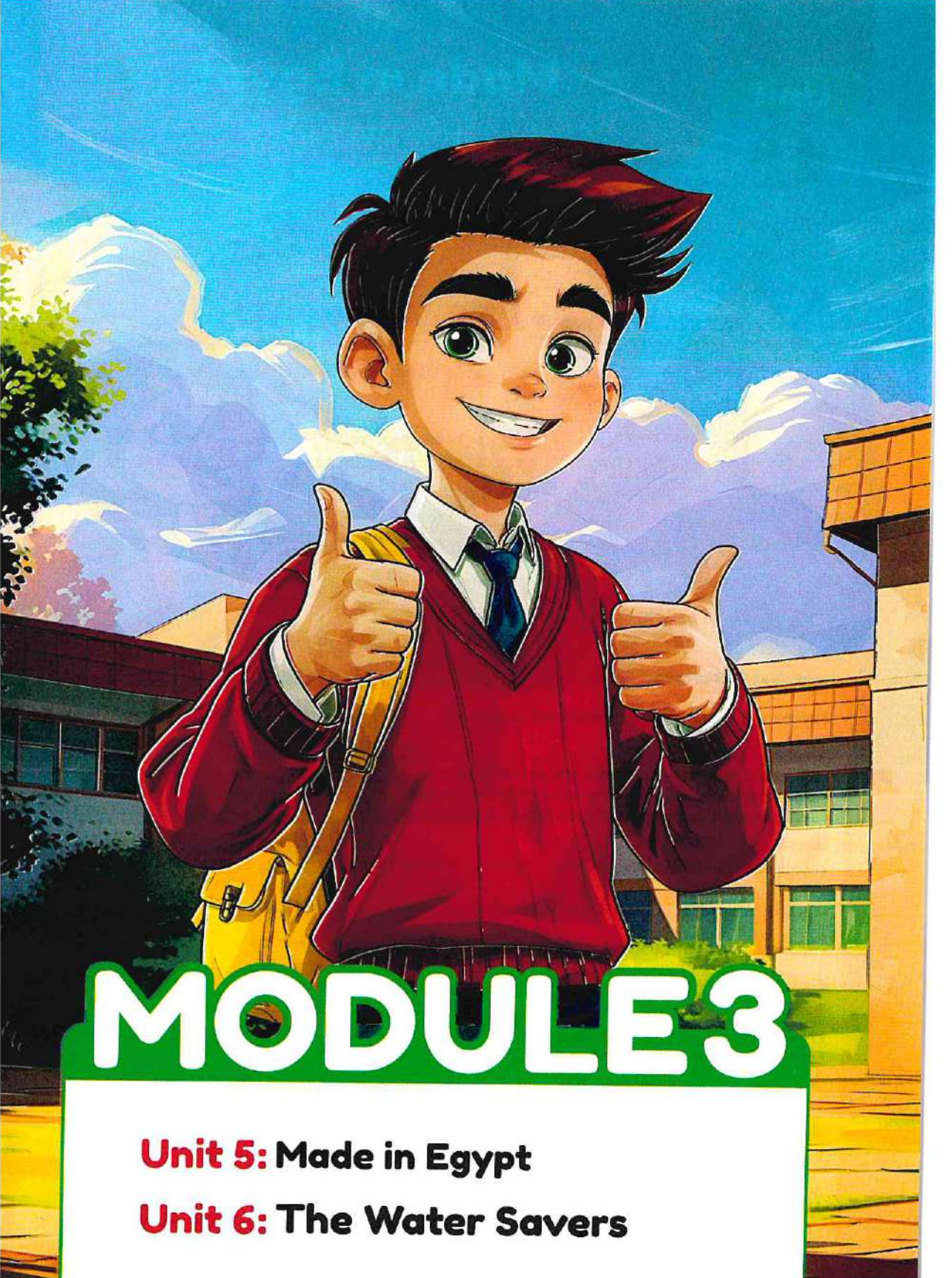
Khadeeja : Great! This way we don't (5)..... the air.

2 Read and circle the odd one out and replace it with the correct word:

1	paramedic	architect	mechanic	vehicle
2	sharp	vehicle	dry	unpleasant
3	community	emergency	control	creature
4	petals	thorns	research	leaves
5	gold	peck	pollute	build
6	granite	brave	papyrus	linen
7	will	mustn't	can't	shouldn't

3 Choose the correct answer:

- 1** You waste water when brushing your teeth.
a) must b) mustn't c) can
- 2** The proud rose grew in a desert.
a) noisy b) dry c) refreshed
- 3** Solar convert sunlight into electricity.
a) amulets b) panels c) creatures
- 4** When something is not nice and makes you feel unhappy or uncomfortable, it is
a) brave b) proud c) unpleasant
- 5** My sister is to ride a bike.
a) can b) able c) should



MODULE 3

Unit 5: Made in Egypt

Unit 6: The Water Savers



Learning Outcomes

• By the end of this unit, the student will be able to:

• بنهاية هذه الوحدة، سيكون الطالب قادرًا على أن:

Speaking

- talk about important places and projects in Egypt.
- express opinions about modern cities and clean energy.
- describe visits to museums or tourist places in Egypt.

- يتحدث عن الأماكن والمشاريع المهمة في مصر.
- يعبر عن رأيه حول المدن الحديثة والطاقة النظيفة.
- يصف زيارته للمتاحف أو الأماكن السياحية في مصر.

Listening

- recognize specific information about Egyptian places and projects.

- يتعرف على معلومات محددة حول الأماكن والمشاريع المصرية.
- يحدد الأفكار الرئيسية في الأوصاف المختصرة للمدن.

- identify main ideas in short descriptions of cities.

- differentiate between the final sounds /d/, /t/, and /Id/ in regular past simple verbs.

- يميز بين أصوات /d/، /t/، /d/ في أفعال الماضي البسيط.

Reading

- recognize Egypt's modern and historical projects.
- distinguish between facts and opinions in factual and opinion-based texts.

- يتعرف على مشاريع مصر الحديثة والتاريخية.
- يميز بين الحقائق والآراء في النصوص الواقعية والنصوص القائمة على الآراء.

- identify specific information related to a reading text.

- يحدد معلومات محددة تتعلق بنص القراءة.

Writing

- use past simple in affirmative & negative forms in meaningful sentences.

- يستخدم الماضي البسيط في صيغتيه الإيجابية والسلبية في جمل مفيدة.

- write a paragraph to express an opinion with reasons and examples.

- يكتب فقرة للتعبير عن رأي مع ذكر الأسباب والأمثلة.

- create a display board about an object in the Grand Egyptian Museum.

- يصمم لوحة عرض حول قطعة أثرية في المتحف المصري الكبير.



Lesson 1

A Trip through Time

رحلة عبر الزمن



Listen and say:

استمع وقل:

Main vocabulary

passport	جواز السفر	luggage	أمتعة/ حقائب السفر	souvenir	هدية تذكارية
brochure	كتيب/ نشرة	exhibition	معرض	travel plan	خطة السفر
information desk	مكتب المعلومات	guided tour	جولة إرشادية	fly	يسافر جواً
pack	يحزم/ يعي	book	يحجز	board	يركب الطائرة

Extra vocabulary

pharaohs	الفراعنة	wonders	عجائب	unusual	غير عادي
land	أرض	suitcase	حقيرة	corner	زاوية
The Grand Egyptian Museum (GEM)		المتحف المصري الكبير		spot	بقعة (مكان)
true (adj.)	حقيقي	experience	تجربة (حياتية)	tools	أدوات
mummies	مومياءات	Solar Boat	مركب الشمس	objects	أشياء
location	موقع	Tutankhamun's mask	قناع توت عنخ آمون	entrance	مدخل
technology	التكنولوجيا	smart screens	الشاشات الذكية	amazing shows	عروض مذهلة

Expressions and Phrases

take (20) years	يستغرق ٢٠ عامًا	once-in-a-lifetime	لمرة واحدة في العمر
belong to	يخص/ ينتمي إلى	get help	يحصل على المساعدة
in a fun way	بطريقة ممتعة	come alive	تنبض بالحياة (تنتعش من جديد)

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
explore	استكشف	locate	يقع
	explored		located

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
stand	يقف في/ يقف	tell	يخبر
	stood		told

The Grand Egyptian Museum المتحف المصري الكبير



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

يهدف هذا السؤال إلى إعطاء الطالب مساحة للتفكير في موضوع الدرس قبل البدء فيه.



Warm up

Why is the location of the Grand Egyptian Museum special?

Egypt is one of the oldest countries in the world. It has pyramids, ancient temples⁽¹⁾, strong pharaohs⁽²⁾, and amazing stories from history. Each year, tourists from many countries come to explore the wonders⁽³⁾ of this unusual⁽⁴⁾ land. In Egypt, history lives in every corner.



One of the newest and most exciting places to visit is the Grand Egyptian Museum (GEM). Work on the museum took almost 20 years to finish. It stands near the Pyramids in Giza, the museum was built in this spot⁽⁵⁾ so visitors can enjoy both ancient and modern Egypt in one trip — a true once-in-a-lifetime experience⁽⁶⁾.

Visitors can see statues⁽⁷⁾, golden jewelry⁽⁸⁾, tools⁽⁹⁾, real mummies⁽¹⁰⁾, and even the Solar Boat⁽¹¹⁾ that belonged to King Khufu. The objects are shown in a special way that tells the story of Egypt from the beginning to the end of the time of the pharaohs.

At the entrance⁽¹²⁾, there is an information desk⁽¹³⁾ where visitors can ask questions or get help. The museum also uses modern technology⁽¹⁴⁾, like smart screens⁽¹⁵⁾ and amazing shows⁽¹⁶⁾, to help people learn in a fun way.

The Grand Egyptian Museum is not just a building; it is a place where Egypt's story comes alive⁽¹⁷⁾.

- | | |
|------|----------------|
| (1) | معابد |
| (2) | الفراعنة |
| (3) | عجائب |
| (4) | غير عادي |
| (5) | بقعة (مكان) |
| (6) | تجربة (حياتية) |
| (7) | تمائيل |
| (8) | مجوهرات |
| (9) | أدوات |
| (10) | موميאות |
| (11) | |
| (12) | مدخل |
| (13) | مكتب المعلومات |
| (14) | التكنولوجيا |
| (15) | الشاشات الذكية |
| (16) | عروض مذهلة |
| (17) | تنبض بالحياة |



Read again and answer: SB

- 1 How long did it take to finish the museum?
- 2 What can visitors see inside the museum?
- 3 Where can visitors ask for help?



The Main Ideas of the Text:

الأفكار الرئيسية في النص:

- ✓ Egypt is one of the oldest countries in the world. مصر هي واحدة من أقدم دول العالم.
- ✓ It has pyramids, ancient temples, strong pharaohs, and amazing stories from history. تضم أهرامات ومعابد قديمة وفراعنة أوثياء وقصصًا تاريخية مذهلة.
- ✓ The Grand Egyptian Museum (GEM) is one of the newest and most exciting places to visit. يُعد المتحف المصري الكبير (GEM) من أحدث الأماكن وأكثرها متعة للزيارة.
- ✓ The museum stands near the Pyramids in Giza. يقع المتحف بالقرب من أهرامات الجيزة.
- ✓ Visitors can see statues, golden jewelry, tools, real mummies, and King Khufu's Solar Boat. يمكن للزوار مشاهدة التماثيل والمجوهرات الذهبية والأدوات والمومياءات الحقيقية ومركب الملك خوفو الشمسي.
- ✓ Objects are shown in a special way that tells the story of Egypt from the beginning to the end of the time of the pharaohs. تُعرض القطع بطريقة مميزة تروي قصة مصر من بدايتها إلى نهاية عصر الفراعنة.
- ✓ The museum also uses modern technology, like smart screens and amazing shows. يستخدم المتحف أيضًا تقنيات حديثة، مثل الشاشات الذكية والعروض المذهلة.
- ✓ The Grand Egyptian Museum is a place where Egypt's story comes alive. المتحف المصري الكبير هو مكان تنبض فيه قصة مصر بالحياة.

✓ Checkpoint Choose the correct answer:

يهدف هذا التدريب إلى قياس مدى فهمك للمفردات اللغوية.

- 1 You need a (spot – passport – tool – screen) to travel.
- 2 I packed my (luggage – board – brochure – passport) last night before the flight.
- 3 Tourists read the (spot – object – wonder – brochure) to find places to visit before going.
- 4 Do you have a ticket to (pack – board – stand – get) the plane? SB
- 5 Hello, I'd like to (book – read – know – write) a hotel room, please. SB
- 6 You can get help at the (tour guide – information desk – luggage – Solar Boat) over there.
- 7 Let's (book – pack – pick – explore) our clothes in these suitcases. SB
- 8 They will (take – belong – stand – fly) to Aswan next year. SB



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)



- The Grand Egyptian Museum is in
a) Aswan b) Luxor c) Cairo d) Giza
- It shows King Khufu's Solar
a) Panel b) Boat c) Plane d) Bus
- The museum uses modern technology like smart
a) laptops b) phones c) screens d) TVs
- comes alive in this museum.
a) History b) Mummies c) Objects d) Temples

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The Pyramids are one of the seven of the world.
a) objects b) tools c) wonders d) lands
- We saw a mummy in the new at the museum. **SB**
a) class b) exhibition c) playground d) hospital
- Our teacher gave us a at the museum. **SB**
a) travel plan b) test paper c) storybook d) math sheet
- I went to the when I didn't know where to go. **SB**
a) toy shop b) information desk c) swimming pool d) bedroom
- I bought a small pyramid as a from the gift shop. **SB**
a) painting b) color c) souvenir d) sport
- Scientists the deep ocean.
a) explore b) book c) pack d) fly

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

temples – Pyramids – pharaohs – mummies

The Grand Egyptian Museum (GEM) is an exciting place to visit in Egypt. It stands near the (1)..... in Giza. Visitors can see statues, golden jewelry, tools, real (2)....., and even the Solar Boat that belonged to King Khufu. The objects are shown in a special way that tells the story of Egypt from the beginning to the end of the time of the (3).....

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

Egypt is one of the oldest countries known for its pyramids, ancient temples, and strong pharaohs. Every year, tourists visit Egypt to explore the wonders of this unusual land. The Grand Egyptian Museum (GEM) is a new and exciting place near the Pyramids in Giza. It took almost 20 years to finish. Visitors can see statues, golden jewelry, real mummies, tools, and the Solar Boat of King Khufu. The museum uses modern technology such as smart screens and amazing shows. There is also an information desk to help visitors. GEM tells the story of Egypt from beginning to end. It is a place where history comes alive.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Egypt is one of the countries in the world.
a) biggest b) longest c) oldest d) youngest
- The Grand Egyptian Museum took years to finish.
a) two b) twelve c) twenty d) two hundred

B Answer the following questions:

- Why do tourists visit Egypt?
- Where is the Grand Egyptian Museum (GEM)?
- What modern technology does the museum use?

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

- Giza – stands – near – The museum – Pyramids – the – in.
.....
- desk – the – an – There is – entrance – information – at.
.....
- can – questions – ask – Visitors – or – get help.
.....
- temples – strong – has – and – pharaohs – Egypt – ancient. 
.....

6 Punctuate the following:

- In egypt, history lives in every corner
.....
- what can tourists see inside the museum
.....



Lesson 2



A Dream Comes True! حلم يتحقق!



Listen and say:

استمع وقل:

Main vocabulary

plateau	هضبة	crowding	ازدحام	cable car	التلفريك (عربة قطار هوائي)
peaceful (adj.)	هادئ/ مسالم	vision	رؤية	sustainable (adj.)	مستدام

Extra vocabulary

national (adj.)	قومي	overcrowded	مكتظ	leading (adj.)	بارز/ رئيسي
sea view	إطلالة على البحر	luxury	رفاهية/ فاخر	water park	ملاهي مائية
center	مركز	education	التعليم	science	العلوم
abroad	خارج البلاد	medicine	الطب	engineering	الهندسة
mountain	جبل	businesses	صناعات/ أعمال تجارية	transportation links	خطوط النقل

Expressions and Phrases

come true	يتحقق	full of life	تنبض بالحياة
run businesses	يدير أعمال تجارية	move in	ينتقل

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة		Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة	
Present	Past	Present	Past
devise	يصمم / يخترع	reduce	يقلل
offer	يعرض	welcome	يرحب
Present	Past	Present	Past
teach	يُدرّس	run	يجري/ يُدير

Al Galala: Egypt's City Above the Clouds الجلالة: مدينة مصرية فوق السحاب



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

يهدف هذا السؤال إلى إعطاء الطالب مساحة للتفكير في موضوع الدرس قبل البدء فيه.



Warm up

How does Al Galala City prove to be a wonder?

Al Galala City is a modern city in Egypt, built on the Al Galala Plateau⁽¹⁾ near Ain Sokhna. It was part of a national⁽²⁾ plan devised⁽³⁾ in 2015 to reduce crowding⁽⁴⁾ in older cities. Today, it is one of Egypt's leading⁽⁵⁾ smart cities with clean air and sea views⁽⁶⁾.



The city has luxury⁽⁷⁾ hotels, beaches, a water park, and a famous cable car⁽⁸⁾ that offers great views from the mountain to the sea. Al Galala is also a center for education⁽⁹⁾ and science. Galala University welcomes students from Egypt and abroad⁽¹⁰⁾ to study medicine⁽¹¹⁾, engineering⁽¹²⁾, and more.

In the past, the area was empty, but now it is full of life⁽¹³⁾. People work in hotels, teach, or run businesses⁽¹⁴⁾. More families are moving in to enjoy its peaceful⁽¹⁵⁾ environment.

The government plans to build more homes, parks, and transportation links⁽¹⁶⁾. Al Galala is a great example of Egypt's vision⁽¹⁷⁾ for smart, sustainable⁽¹⁸⁾ cities.

(1)	هضبة
(2)	قومي
(3)	صمم
(4)	ازدحام
(5)	بارز/ رئيسي
(6)	إطلالات على البحر
(7)	رفاهية/ فاخر
(8)	تليفريك
(9)	التعلم
(10)	خارج البلاد
(11)	الطب
(12)	الهندسة
(13)	مفعمر بالحياة
(14)	يدير الأعمال
(15)	مسالم/ هادئ
(16)	خطوط النقل
(17)	رؤية
(18)	مستدام

Read again and answer: SB

- 1 When did the Egyptian government start building Al Galala City?
- 2 Name two fun things visitors can do in Al Galala City.
- 3 How was Al Galala Plateau different in the past compared to now?

The Main Ideas of the Text:

الأفكار الرئيسية في النص:

- Al Galala City is a modern city in Egypt, built on the Al Galala Plateau.
مدينة الجلالة مدينة حديثة في مصر، بُنيت على هضبة الجلالة.
- It was part of a national plan devised in 2015 to reduce crowding in older cities.
كانت جزءًا من خطة قومية وضعت في عام ٢٠١٥ للحد من الازدحام في المدن القديمة.
- Today, it is one of Egypt's leading smart cities with clean air and sea views.
وهي اليوم واحدة من المدن الذكية الرائدة في مصر التي تتميز بهوائها النقي وإطلالتها على البحر.
- The city has luxury hotels, beaches, a water park, and a famous cable car.
تضم المدينة فنادق فاخرة وشواطئ وحديقة مائية وتلفريكًا شهيرًا.
- Al Galala is also a center for education and science; students come and study at Al Galala University.
الجلالة أيضًا مركز للتعليم والعلوم، حيث يأتي الطلاب ويدرسوا في جامعة الجلالة.
- In the past, the area was empty, but now it is full of life.
في الماضي، كانت المنطقة خالية، لكنها الآن تفيض بالحياة.
- People work in hotels, teach, or run businesses, and more families are moving in.
يعمل الناس في الفنادق، أو يدرسون، أو يُديرُونَ أعمالًا تجارية، وينتقل المزيد من العائلات إليها.
- Al Galala is a great example of Egypt's vision for smart, sustainable cities.
الجلالة مثال رائع على رؤية مصر للمدن الذكية والمستدامة.

Read and write T (True) or F (False): SB

- 1 Al Galala City is located on the Mediterranean Sea. (.....)
- 2 The cable car is one of the main attractions in Al Galala City. (.....)
- 3 Al Galala Plateau was an empty place in the past. (.....)
- 4 Only Egyptians are allowed to study in Galala University. (.....)



Language in Use

The Past Simple Tense زمن الماضي البسيط

• We use the past simple for:

- a) Actions that started and finished in the past.

نستخدم الماضي البسيط في:

أحداث بدأت وانتهت في الماضي.

Example: She **baked** a delicious cake **yesterday**.

- b) Actions that happened one after another in the past.

أحداث وقعت واحدًا تلو الآخر.

Example: We **entered** the museum, **took** photos, **and bought** souvenirs.

- c) Habits in the past.

عادات في الماضي.

Example: They **played** outside after school **every day**.

Affirmative Form:

صيغة الإثبات:

... التصريف الثاني للفعل + (الفاعل) Subject

e.g. He **visited** his uncle **last Friday**.e.g. We **got** a new computer **a week ago**.

1. Regular Verbs أفعال منتظمة

معظم الأفعال يضاف لها
:(ed)e.g. rain - **rained**الأفعال المنتهية بـ (e) يضاف
:(d) لهاe.g. use → **used**الأفعال المنتهية بـ (y) قبلها حرف ساكن،
يُحذف الـ (y) ويضاف إليها الـ (ied):e.g. study → **studied**الأفعال ذات المقطع الواحد المنتهية
بـ (a, e, i, o, u) يضاف
لها (ed) مع مضاعفة الحرف الساكن:e.g. stop → **stopped**

2. Irregular Verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

أفعال تتغير في زمن الماضي البسيط (تحفظ) مثل:

Present	Past	Present	Past	Present	Past
go يذهب	went	find يجد	found	make يصنع	made
has/ have يمتلك	had	am/ is يكون (المفرد)	was	are يكون (الجمع)	were

Negative Form:

صيغة النفي:

... الفعل في المصدر (inf.) + didn't + Subject

e.g. Noha **didn't clean** the house **last night**.e.g. They **didn't go** to the cinema.

Got it:

I **didn't** (wrote) my homework **yesterday**.

• الإجابة الصحيحة هي (write) لأن بعد (didn't) يأتي الفعل في المصدر.

Yes/No Question:

السؤال بـ (هل):

Question:

A: Did + subject + (inf.) ... في المصدر ؟

Answer:

B: Yes,

subject

did.

B: No,

didn't.

e.g. A: Did you travel last summer?

B: Yes, I did.

B: No, I didn't.

Wh- Question:

السؤال باستخدام كلمة الاستفهام:

A: Wh- word

did

subject

(inf.) ... في المصدر ؟

B: Subject + التصريف الثاني للفعل ...

e.g. A: Where did he go yesterday?

B: He went to the club.

e.g. A: Who did they play with?

B: They played with their friends.

Keywords:

الكلمات الدالة:

yesterday أمس - last الماضي - ago منذ - in the past في الماضي



Got it:

Where (do) they go last week?

الإجابة الصحيحة هي (did) لأن كلمة (last week) تدل على زمن الماضي.

✓ Checkpoint 1. Choose the correct answer:

يهدف هذا التدريب إلى قياس مدى فهمك للقواعد اللغوية.

- 1 Eslam (goes - went - go - going) to the cinema three days ago.
- 2 My family (have - has - having - had) a picnic in the park last Sunday.
- 3 My team didn't (win - wins - won - winning) the game last week.
- 4 Did Ola (goes - go - went - going) to the store yesterday?
- 5 When (did - does - is - do) your dad come home last night?

2. Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 Mom (bakes) a delicious cake for her birthday a week ago.
- 2 My brother (not) have his breakfast yesterday.
- 3 Dad didn't (slept) well.
- 4 (Do) you wake up early yesterday?
- 5 Where (do) you live in 1990?

Verb to "be" in the past simple فعل "يكون" في زمن الماضي البسيط

Affirmative Form:

صيغة الإثبات:

I / He / She / It + **was** ...e.g. I **was** sad at the party.You / We / They + **were** ...e.g. We **were** excited at the zoo.

Negative Form:

صيغة النفي:

I / He / She / It + **wasn't** ...e.g. Ramy **wasn't** fine last week.You / We / They + **weren't** ...e.g. They **weren't** at the park.

Yes/No Question:

السؤال بـ (هل):

Was + (I / he / she / it) ... ?e.g. A: **Was** Maher at home?B: **Yes**, he **was**.

OR

B: **No**, he **wasn't**.**Were** + (we / you / they) ... ?e.g. A: **Were** they at the cinema?B: **Yes**, they **were**.

OR

B: **No**, they **weren't**.

Got it:

I (not be) lazy at school last year.

• بسبب وجود (last year)، فإن تصريف الفعل (be) مع الفاعل (I) يكون (wasn't).

✓ Checkpoint 1. Choose the correct answer:

يهدف هذا التدريب إلى قياس مدى فهمك للقواعد اللغوية.

- I (is – am – was – were) happy to see my friend yesterday.
- Nawal (is – does – was – were) the tallest student in her class last year.
- The players (am – is – does – were) tired after playing the last match.
- The students (aren't – don't – weren't – wasn't) ready for the test last week.

2. Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- Yesterday, I (be) at home all day.
- (Be) Huda sad yesterday?
- (Be) they happy with their presents?
- (Be) your brother at home last night?

QUICK PRACTICE ON THE PAST SIMPLE TENSE

1 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 I (goes) to the mountains last weekend.
- 2 My grandparents (visit) us last Eid.
- 3 Mona didn't (sang) the birthday song in her party.
- 4 (Does) your parents call you yesterday?
- 5 I (keeping) the present you gave to me a week ago.
- 6 The baby (not sleep) well yesterday.
- 7 Did you (likes) the movie you watched last night?
- 8 She (draws) the most beautiful picture last month.
- 9 What time did you (wakes) up yesterday?
- 10 We (be) really excited about our trip last week.
- 11 Where (be) you last night?
- 12 (Are) you happy at the party last week?
- 13 The weather (is) really cold last Monday.
- 14 My friends (aren't) at the club at 5.00 pm yesterday.
- 15 They didn't (went) to the theater last month.

2 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

- 1 yesterday – My uncle – fixed – our – bicycle.
.....
- 2 the math – quiz – didn't – pass – Ahmed – last – Sunday.
.....
- 3 a big – summer – built – We – last – sand castle.
.....
- 4 didn't – project – finish – The students – on time – the.
.....
- 5 visited – the – I – Museum – week – Egyptian – last.
.....

Practice



Lesson 2

Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The gives a great view from the top.
a) Solar Boat b) cable car c) water park d) beach
- 2 Al Galala is a special place in Egypt.
a) Sea b) River c) Plateau d) Ocean
- 3 The government built new cities to reduce in older cities.
a) transports b) parks c) views d) crowding
- 4 His for the future is to help poor people.
a) planet b) plant c) vision d) view
- 5 Solar power is a/an energy source.
a) fast b) sustainable c) bad d) empty
- 6 She bought a/an car that has soft seats and a smart screen.
a) luxury b) far c) empty d) cheap
- 7 helps people build roads and bridges.
a) Medicine b) Teaching c) Nursing d) Engineering
- 8 The Pyramids are part of Egypt's history.
a) international b) global c) abroad d) national

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

education – sustainable – unhealthy – cable cars



Al Galala is a new city near the Red Sea. It helps people move away from big and overcrowded cities. There are comfortable hotels and clean beaches for visitors. From the (1)....., people can see a great view of the sea and mountains. The city is also a center for (2)..... and learning. Many families are moving to Al Galala to enjoy a better life. It is part of Egypt's plan to build (3)..... cities for the future.

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1 plans – more – The government – homes – build – to.

2 built – Al Galala City – Ain – near – was – Sokhna.

3 go – last – Where – did – they – weekend?

4 run businesses – work in – People – teach, – hotels, – or.



4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 We didn't (visited) Aswan last summer.
- 2 My family (go) on a vacation last year.
- 3 They (buy) a new house a year ago.
- 4 Fares (be) angry with his brother yesterday.
- 5 Where (do) they travel two years ago?
- 6 We didn't (went) to school yesterday.
- 7 She (travel) to Luxor last month.
- 8 He (not have) any homework last week.
- 9 He (not be) at the club yesterday.
- 10 My grandma (talk) with me last week.
- 11 The cat didn't (caught) the mouse yesterday.
- 12 (Be) you at school three hours ago?
- 13 They (build) a new house last year.
- 14 She (be) happy to see her friends a week ago.
- 15 What did you (played) last week?

5 Punctuate the following:

1 al galala City is a modern city in Egypt.

2 did you finish the report yesterday

6 Write a text of about (50 - 60) words using the following guiding elements:

"Al Galala City"

built on – luxury hotels – in the past





Lesson 3



Story



Listen and say:

استمع وقل:

Main vocabulary

bundle	حزمة	single sticks	عصى منفردة	unity	الاتحاد / يتحد
--------	------	---------------	------------	-------	----------------

Extra vocabulary

sons	أبناء	worried (adj.)	قلق / مزعج	strong (adj.)	قوى
alone (adj.)	وحيد / بمفرده	wisdom	حكمة	strength	قوة

Expressions and Phrases

a long time ago	منذ زمن بعيد	along the Nile	بمحاذاة نهر النيل	work together	يعملوا معًا
plenty of food	الكثير من الطعام	grow weaker	يصبح أضعف	worry about	يقلق بشأن

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
argue يجادل	argued	unite يتحد	united
tie يربط	tied	fail يفشل	failed

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
fight يتشاجر	fought	feed يطعم	fed
break يكسر	broke	understand يفهم	understood

Definitions

argue	to give reasons for or against something	أن تقدم أسبابًا مع أو ضد شيء ما
bundle	a group of things tied together	مجموعة أشياء مربوطة معًا
strength	being strong	تعني أن تكون قويًا
wisdom	using your knowledge to make good decisions	استخدام معرفتك لاتخاذ قرارات جيدة
unite	to come together	تعني أن تتحد أو تنضم معًا
setting	the place and time of a story	هو الزمان والمكان في القصة
characters	the people or animals in a story	هم الأشخاص أو الحيوانات في القصة
beginning	this is where a story starts	حيث تكون بداية القصة
middle	this is where the problem or main event happens	حيث تحدث فيه المشكلة أو الحدث الرئيسي
end	this is where a story ends	حيث تنتهي فيه القصة
moral	the lesson we learn from a story	هو الدرس الذي نتعلمه من القصة

The Bundle of Sticks

حزمة من العصي



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

The beginning

A long time ago, in a small village⁽¹⁾ along the Nile River, there lived an old man with his three sons⁽²⁾. The old man was a farmer who worked hard growing crops on his land. The farm was big and gave them plenty of food, but the three sons were always fighting⁽³⁾. They argued about who would water the crops, feed the animals, and who worked the hardest.



- | | |
|-----|----------|
| (1) | قرية |
| (2) | أبناء |
| (3) | يتشاجرون |



Checkpoint

The three sons always (played – slept – helped – argued).

The middle

This made their father very worried.

As the old man grew weaker⁽⁴⁾, he became more worried about his sons. "My sons," he said, "you should stop fighting and work together. If you all unite, you will be strong⁽⁵⁾".

The three sons did not listen to their father. One day, the father called his sons and showed them a bundle of sticks⁽⁶⁾ tied together. He asked each son to break the bundle. Each one tried hard, but they failed.

- | | |
|-----|---------------|
| (4) | أصبح أضعف |
| (5) | قوى |
| (6) | حزمة من العصي |



Checkpoint

The sons tried to break the bundle of sticks, but they (won – ran – failed – laughed).



Tip!

When you read a story, try to feel what the character feels.

عندما تقرأ قصة، حاول أن تشعر بما يشعر به الشخص في القصة.

Think: Do I feel the same way the character does in this part?

فكر: هل أشعر بنفس الشعور في هذا الجزء؟



The end

Then, the father untied the bundle and gave them single sticks. The sons broke them easily.

(7) الاتحاد يمنح القوة

"You see," said the father, "these sticks are just like you. Together, you are strong. But alone, you can be broken easily." The father went on saying, "Unity gives strength." From that day on, the sons understood their father's wisdom. They stopped fighting and worked together.

Checkpoint The father gave each son single (books – coins – keys – sticks).

The moral of the story

Unity and working together gives us strength.

الاتحاد والعمل معًا يمنحنا القوة.

Read again and answer:

- 1 Where did the old man live?
- 2 Do you think the father was wise? Why?

Let's organize the story!

Beginning	The sons always argued and didn't work together.
Middle	The father gave his three sons a bundle of sticks to teach them unity.
End	The sons learned the lesson and worked together.
Characters	The old man (father) and his three sons.
Setting	A small village near the Nile, a long time ago.

The Main Ideas of the Text:

الأفكار الرئيسية في النص:

- There were an old man and his three sons. كان هناك رجل عجوز وأبناؤه الثلاثة.
- They lived in a small village near the Nile. كانوا يعيشون في قرية صغيرة قرب نهر النيل.
- The sons always argued and didn't work together. كان الأبناء يتشاجرون دائمًا ولا يعملون معًا.
- The father was worried about his sons. كان الأب قلقًا على أبنائه.
- He gave them a bundle of sticks. أعطاهم حزمة من العصي.
- They couldn't break the bundle. لم يستطيعوا كسر الحزمة.
- They broke the sticks easily when they were single. كسروا العصي بسهولة عندما كانت منفردة.
- They learned that unity gives strength. تعلموا أن الاتحاد يمنح القوة.



Pronunciation

الأفعال المنتهية بـ ed (-ed endings)



Listen and say:

استمع وقل:



Tip!

When we say past tense verbs ending in -ed, we can hear three different sounds.

عندما نقول أفعال الزمن الماضي التي تنتهي بـ -ed، يمكننا سماع ثلاثة أصوات مختلفة.

/t/

يُنطق حرف (ed) بصوت /t/
بعد الأفعال التي تنتهي بـ:
p, k, f, s, ch, sh
(voiceless sounds)

/d/

يُنطق حرف (ed) بصوت /d/
بعد الأفعال التي تنتهي بـ:
حروف العلة (vowels) أو
أصوات منطوقة (voiced sounds) مثل:
b, g, v, l, m, n, r, z

/ɪd/

يُنطق حرف (ed) بصوت /ɪd/
بعد الأفعال التي تنتهي بـ:
d أو t

cooked	طبخ	liked	أحب	loved	أحب	needed	أحتاج
kissed	قَبَّلَ	watched	شاهد	played	لعب	wanted	أراد
laughed	ضحك	washed	غسل	cleaned	نظف	painted	دهن/رسم
jumped	قفز			called	نادى / اتصل	started	بدأ
helped	ساعد					visited	زار



Note

Voiced sounds الأصوات المنطوقة

When you touch your throat, you feel a vibration.

عندما تلمس حلقك (الحنجرة)، ستشعر بالاهتزاز.

Voiceless sounds الأصوات المهموسة

No vibration in your throat when you say them.

لا يوجد اهتزاز في الحلق عند نطق هذه الأصوات.

Read the short paragraph. Find all the past tense verbs ending in -ed. Write them in the correct column:

SB

Yesterday, I visited my friend and we played games. We watched a funny movie and laughed a lot. After that, we cooked dinner and cleaned the kitchen. We wanted to make a cake, but we were too tired.

/t/	/d/	/ɪd/



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 A good story always has a clear at the end.
a) moral b) tie c) stick d) character
- 2 When we others, we give them food.
a) break b) fail c) feed d) argue
- 3 When people, they argue or try to hurt each other.
a) feed b) unite c) fight d) believe
- 4 A is a group of things tied together.
a) bundle b) moral c) wisdom d) stick
- 5 To means to give reasons for or against something.
a) unite b) fight c) argue d) fail
- 6 is using your knowledge to make good decisions.
a) Wisdom b) Setting c) Uniting d) Arguing
- 7 To means to come together.
a) break b) unite c) tie d) ride
- 8 The of a story tells us where and when it happens.
a) character b) bundle c) setting d) moral

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

plenty – sons – strength – single

My name is Karim. I read a story about a wise father and his (1)..... who always argued together. The father gave them a lesson about how unity gives (2)..... He asked them to tie sticks together and try to break them. They couldn't! But when each son was given a (3)..... stick, the stick was easy to break.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

A clever man had many sons. They didn't agree and often argued or fought. This made their father worried. He wanted to teach them a lesson. One day, he brought a bundle of sticks and said, "Try to break this." The sons tried, but no one could break it. Then he gave them one stick each. This time, they were able to break the sticks easily. The father said, "If you stay together, no one can hurt you. But if you fight and are alone, you can be broken easily." The sons understood the lesson and stopped fighting.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The general idea of the text is about
a) playing games b) growing crops c) staying united d) planting trees
- The meaning of the underlined word "clever" is ".....".
a) brave b) weak c) old d) wise

B Answer the following questions:

- Why was the father worried?
.....
- What did the father bring to his sons?
.....
- What is the moral of the story?
.....

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

- son – Each – the – bundle – break – tried – to.
.....

- The – was – worried – old man – very.
.....

- stop – together – You – work – should – fighting – and.
.....

Super Question ?

5 Punctuate the following:

- the sons broke the single sticks easily
.....

- how did the sons feel after the lesson
.....

6 Write a text of about (50 - 60) words using the following guiding elements:

"The importance of unity"

fight – strong – work together





Lessons 4 and 5



Listen and say:

استمع وقل:

Main vocabulary

Benban بنبان (اسم قرية بأسوان)	solar energy الطاقة الشمسية	solar stations محطات شمسية
panels ألواح	chalice كأس (طقسى / احتفالى)	alabaster ألباستر / حجر المرمر (نوع من الحجار البيضاء)

Extra vocabulary

sustainable energy طاقة مستدامة	pollution تلوث	ideal (adj.) مثالى
major (adj.) رئيسى	expensive fuel وقود باهظ الثمن	environment البيئة
Upper Egypt صعيد مصر	training تدريب	local communities المجتمعات المحلية
valuable project مشروع ذو قيمة	development تطوير / تنمية	lotus flower زهرة اللوتس
handles مقابض	ceremony طقس / احتفال	funeral جنازة
rituals طقوس	symbol رمز	eternal life الحياة الأبدية

Expressions and Phrases

one of the world's largest واحدة من الأكبر في العالم	provide electricity to توفّر الكهرباء لـ
keep the air safe يحافظ على الهواء نظيفاً	look like يشبه
a proud step toward خطوة فخر نحو	live forever in the afterlife يعيش إلى الأبد في الحياة الأخرى

Important sites in Egypt

Benban Solar Park حطة بنبان للطاقة الشمسية	King Tutankhamun's Tomb مقبرة الملك توت عنخ آمون
The Grand Egyptian Museum المتحف المصرى الكبير	

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
provide يوفّر	provided	reduce يُقلل	reduced
create يخلق / يُنشئ	created	support يدعم	supported
improve يطور	improved	benefit يستفيد	benefited
protect يحمى	protected	believe يعتقد	believed

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
bring يجلب	brought	find يجد	found



Egypt Goes Green مصر تتجه نحو الطاقة الخضراء



Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

Read Mariam's article اقرأ مقال مريم

Eco News Egypt
Posted on April 12
Category:
Energy & Environment

Why I Think Benban Is Important

By: Mariam Mahmoud

Egypt is a sunny country, making it **ideal**⁽¹⁾ for solar energy. One major project is Benban Solar Park near Aswan, one of the world's largest **solar stations**⁽²⁾. Built between 2018 and 2019, it has over 6 million panels and provides electricity to homes, schools, hospitals, and factories.

Benban uses clean, **sustainable energy**⁽³⁾, reducing pollution, and keeping the air safe. It also creates thousands of jobs for engineers, builders, and people from nearby villages, helping them **support**⁽⁴⁾ their families.

The project is important because it saves money by using sunlight instead of **expensive fuel**⁽⁵⁾, protects the environment, and brings jobs to Upper Egypt. Although some workers need **training**⁽⁶⁾, it helps them learn new skills and improves **local communities**⁽⁷⁾.

Benban Solar Park is a smart and **valuable project**⁽⁸⁾ for Egypt. It benefits people, protects nature, and supports **development**⁽⁹⁾. It's a proud step toward a cleaner, better future.



- (1) مثال
(2) محطات طاقة شمسية
(3) طاقة مستدامة
(4) يدعم / يساند
(5) وقود باهظ / غالي
(6) تدريب
(7) المجتمعات المحلية
(8) مشروع قيّم / ذو قيمة
(9) تطوير

Read and circle the correct answer between brackets: SB

- Solar energy comes from the (wind – water – sun).
- Benban Solar Park is located near (Aswan – Luxor – Cairo).
- The park has over (3 – 6 – 9) million solar panels.
- The project created thousands of (machines – robots – jobs).
- The writer feels (bored – proud – tired) of the project.

**Tip!**

When you write about what you think or how you feel about something—this is called opinion writing. It's a way to share your ideas and say what you believe.

عندما تكتب عما تعتقده أو ما تشعر به تجاه شيء ما، فهذا يُسمى كتابة الرأي (opinion writing).
وهي طريقة لمشاركة أفكارك والتعبير عما تؤمن به.

Features of Opinion Writing: خصائص كتابة الرأي:

Opinion starter بداية الرأي	e.g. "I think Benban Solar Park is a very important and smart project for Egypt."
Supporting reasons أسباب داعمة للرأي	e.g. "It helps us save money by using sunlight... It protects the environment."
Use of examples استخدام أمثلة	e.g. "It generates electricity for places, such as homes, schools, hospitals, and factories."
Strong adjectives صفات قوية	e.g. "smart, important, great, cleaner, proud"
Sequence words كلمات التسلسل	e.g. "First..., Second..., Third..., As a result..., In conclusion..."
Writer's voice using 1 st person pronouns استخدام الضمير المتكلم	e.g. "I feel proud of this project. I hope other countries follow Egypt's example."

To express your opinion clearly, begin with an opinion sentence such as:

- لكي تُعبر عن رأيك بوضوح، ابدأ بجملة رأي مثل:
- I think أعتقد أن
 - I believe أؤمن بأن
 - In my opinion في رأيي
 - I like because لأن

**The Main Ideas of the Text:****الأفكار الرئيسية في النص:**

- Benban Solar Park is in Upper Egypt, near Aswan. محطة بنبان للطاقة الشمسية موجودة في صعيد مصر، قرب أسوان.
- It is one of the world's largest solar stations. هي واحدة من أكبر محطات الطاقة الشمسية في العالم.
- It uses sunlight to make clean electricity. تستخدم ضوء الشمس لإنتاج كهرباء نظيفة.
- It provides electricity to homes, schools, and hospitals. توفر الكهرباء للمنازل والمدارس والمستشفيات.
- It protects the environment and keeps the air clean. تحمي البيئة وتحافظ على الهواء نظيفاً.
- It creates jobs for engineers, builders, and local people. توفر وظائف للمهندسين وعمال البناء والسكان المحليين.
- It is a smart and important project for Egypt's future. إنه مشروع ذكي ومهم لمستقبل مصر.

Lotus Chalice الكأس المزخرف بشكل زهرة اللوتس

انظر واقرأ:

Look and read:

A Display Board about an Object in the Grand Egyptian Museum

لوحة عرض عن قطعة في المتحف المصري الكبير

This **chalice**⁽¹⁾ is made of **alabaster**⁽²⁾. It looks like a white lotus flower with two **handles**⁽³⁾. It was found in King Tutankhamun's **tomb**⁽⁴⁾. Now, it is in the Grand Egyptian Museum. It was used in special **ceremonies**⁽⁵⁾ like **funeral rituals**⁽⁶⁾. It is a symbol of **eternal**⁽⁷⁾ life and beauty. People believed it helped the king live forever in the **afterlife**⁽⁸⁾.



These are some steps to make a display board:

Add a picture. Choose a clear photo or drawing of the object.



Write a short paragraph. Use simple sentences to give information. Write about:

What is the object?

It is a chalice made of alabaster.

هو كأس مصنوع من المرمر.

What does it look like?

It looks like a white lotus flower with two handles.

يبدو وكأنه زهرة لوتس بيضاء ذات مقبضين.

Where was it found?

It was found in King Tutankhamun's tomb.

تم العثور عليه في مقبرة الملك توت عنخ آمون.

Where is it now?

It is in the Grand Egyptian Museum.

وهو موجود في المتحف المصري الكبير.

What was it used for?

It was used in special ceremonies like funerals.

تم استخدامه في الاحتفالات الخاصة مثل الجنازات.

What does it mean?

It is a symbol of beauty and eternal life.

إنه رمز للجمال والحياة الأبدية.

(1) كأس (طقسى / احتفالي)

(2) ألباستر / مرمر (نوع من الحجارة البيضاء)

(3) مقابض

(4) مقبرة

(5) احتفالات / شعائر

(6) طقوس الجنازة

(7) أبدي

(8) ما بعد / الحياة الأخرى الموت

Write the title. Write the name of the object at the top.

Lotus Chalice

✓ Checkpoint Why was the chalice important?

Practice



Lessons 4 and 5

Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The workers had to help them learn the job.
a) pollution b) ritual c) training d) symbol
- 2 We must work together to air pollution.
a) create b) reduce c) support d) believe
- 3 This project helps the environment. It's very important.
a) pollute b) protect c) damage d) forget
- 4 can harm plants, animals, and people.
a) Fuel b) Air c) Pollution d) Solar energy
- 5 These stations were built to electricity to homes.
a) provide b) damage c) lose d) die
- 6 Many people in the local got jobs because of the project.
a) flowers b) handles c) communities d) panels
- 7 The heart is often used as a of love.
a) chalice b) flower c) symbol d) panel
- 8 That teacher is a/an role model for her students.
a) ideal b) tired c) local d) ancient

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

eternal – tomb – job – ceremonies

This beautiful chalice is one of the most famous treasures from Ancient Egypt. It was found in King Tutankhamun's (1)..... . The chalice is made of white alabaster and looks like a lotus flower. It has two handles and was used in important (2)..... . People believed it was a symbol of (3)..... life. It is now in the Grand Egyptian Museum.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

Egypt is a sunny country, so it's perfect for using solar energy. Benban Solar Park is near Aswan. It is one of the biggest solar stations in the world. It was built between 2018 and 2019. The park has over 6 million solar panels. It provides electricity to homes, schools, and hospitals. It also helps the environment by using sustainable energy instead of fossil fuels. Benban gives jobs to many people, like engineers and builders. It supports families and saves money. This solar park is a smart project. It protects nature and benefits the people in Upper Egypt.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Benban Solar Park is near
a) Cairo b) Luxor c) Aswan d) Giza
- The underlined word "sustainable" in the text is closest in meaning to
a) expensive b) continuous c) dangerous d) fast

B Answer the following questions:

- What kinds of energy does Benban use?
.....
- How does Benban help local people?
.....
- Summarize the text in two sentences.
.....

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

- clean – makes – sunlight – electricity – It – from.
.....
- helps – the – people – project – This – local.
.....
- Solar Park – a smart – project – and – Benban – is – valuable.
.....
- is – and – The chalice – eternal – beauty – a symbol of – life. Super Question ?

5 Punctuate the following:

- benban is located in Upper egypt.
.....
- the project created thousands of jobs
.....

6 Write a text of about (50 - 60) words using the following guiding elements:

"How clean energy helps the environment"

solar energy – pollution – electricity



Unit 5

REVIEW



يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من مراجعة أهم الأجزاء التي وردت بالوحدة.

Lesson (1)

passport	جواز سفر	brochure	كتيب / نشرة
information desk	مكتب المعلومات	pack	يحمز / يعبئ
luggage	أمتعة / حقائب السفر	exhibition	معرض
guided tour	جولة إرشادية	book	يحمز
souvenir	هدية تذكارية	travel plan	خطة السفر
fly	يسافر جواً	board	يركب الطائرة

Lesson (2)

plateau	هضبة	peaceful	هادئ/ مسالم
crowding	ازدحام	vision	رؤية
cable car	التلفريك (عربة قطار هوائي)	sustainable	مستدام
national	قومي	sea view	إطلالة على البحر
center	مركز	abroad	خارج البلاد
mountain	جبل	luxury	رفاهية/ فاخر

Lesson (3)

bundle	حزمة	worried	قلق/ متزعزع
single sticks	عصى منفردة	wisdom	حكمة
unity	الاتحاد/ الوحدة	strong	قوى
sons	ابناء	strength	قوة
alone	وحيد/ بمفرده	argue	يجادل

Lessons (4 and 5)

panels	الواح	solar energy	الطاقة الشمسية
chalice	كأس (طقس/ احتفال)	solar stations	محطات شمسية
alabaster	ألباستر (نوع من الحجر الجيري الأبيض)	major	رئيسي
Upper Egypt	صعيد مصر	handles	مقابض
rituals	طقوس	ideal	مثالي
funeral	جنازة	valuable project	مشروع ذو قيمة

The Past Simple Tense زمن الماضي البسيط

Affirmative Form:

صيغة الإثبات:

Subject + (الفاعل) + التصريف الثاني للفعل + ...

e.g. He traveled all over Egypt.

Negative Form:

صيغة النفي:

Subject + didn't + (inf.) المصدر في المصدر ...

e.g. I didn't watch TV last night.

Yes/No Question:

السؤال بـ (هل):

Did + subject + (inf.) المصدر في المصدر ...?

e.g. Did you study yesterday?

Wh- Question:

السؤال باستخدام أدوات الاستفهام:

Wh- word + did + subject (الفاعل) + (inf.) المصدر في المصدر ...?

e.g. What did you buy yesterday?

Keywords:

الكلمات الدالة:

yesterday – last – ago – in the past

The past forms of verb to be

Affirmative: was/ were

e.g. - He was very tired yesterday. - They were at school last week.

Negative: wasn't / weren't

e.g. - I wasn't fast in the past. - You weren't here last night.

Unit 5

CHECK YOUR VOCABULARY



تأكد من حفظك لكلمات الدروس قبل البدء في إجابة اختبار الوحدة.

Lesson 1

الكلمة بالعربية	الكلمة بالإنجليزية
guided tour	كتيب/ نشرة
book	معرض
mummies	هدية تذكارية
entrance	أمتعة
information desk	جواز سفر

Lesson 2

sustainable	هادئ/ مسالم
vision	التلفريك
national	عروض مذهلة
medicine	ازدحام
abroad	هضبة

Lesson 3

worried	حكمة
tie	وحيد/ بمفرده
sons	قوة
unite	حزمة
strong	الاتحاد/ الوحدة

Lessons 4 and 5

expensive fuel	الطاقة الشمسية
training	محطات شمسية
Upper Egypt	ألواح
symbol	مثالي

يهدف هذا التدريب إلى قياس مدى حفظ الطالب لتصريفات الأفعال.

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Present	Past	Present	Past
reduce			brought
understand		offer	
	fought	locate	
explore			devised
teach		break	

"تسميع كلمات أكثر خاصة بهذه الوحدة .. اذهب إلى كراسة التسميع آخر الكتاب."



لكي تتمكن من كتابة الموضوعات بشكل مميز، اتبع هذه الخطوات.

How to write about Al Galala City:

- Al Galala City is a modern city in Egypt.
- Today, it's + أهمية المدينة العالمية.
- The city has + مواقع الجذب السياحي في المدينة.
- In the past + ما كانت عليه المدينة في الماضي.
- Al Galala is a great example of Egypt's vision for smart, sustainable cities.

"Al Galala City"

Al Galala City is a modern city in Egypt. Today, it is one of Egypt's leading smart cities. The city has luxury hotels, beaches, a water park, and a famous cable car that offers great views from the mountain to the sea. Al Galala is also a center for education and science. In the past, the area was empty, but now it is full of life. Al Galala is a great example of Egypt's vision for smart, sustainable cities.

How to write about what you think about Benban:

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|-------------------------|
| ◦ Start with an opinion starter. | ابدأ بمقدمة تدعم رأيك. |
| ◦ Write an opinion statement. | اكتب جملة تعبر عن رأيك. |
| ◦ Support your opinion with reasons. | ادعم رأيك بالأسباب. |
| ◦ Use strong adjectives. | استخدم صفات معبرة. |
| ◦ Use first person pronouns. | استخدم ضمير المتكلم. |

"What I think about Benban"

Egypt is a sunny country, making it ideal for solar energy. I think Benban Solar Park is a very important and smart project for Egypt. It helps us save money by using sunlight, and it protects the environment. It generates electricity for places, such as homes, schools, hospitals, and factories. I feel proud of this project. I hope other countries follow Egypt's example.

1 Read the words in bold. Match them to their meanings:

- | | |
|------------|---|
| 1 argue | () a. being strong. |
| 2 bundle | () b. to come together. |
| 3 strength | () c. gave reasons for or against something. |
| 4 wisdom | () d. a group of things tied together. |
| 5 unite | () e. using your knowledge to make good decisions. |

2 Complete the paragraph with the Past Simple form of the verbs between brackets:

Last weekend, Omar and his friend (1)..... (are) at the new science museum. They (2)..... (watch) a show about space. Omar (3)..... (not understand) some parts of it. His friend (4)..... (explain) everything to him. They (5)..... (take) photos of the rockets and stars. At the end, the guide (6)..... (ask) if he (7)..... (enjoy) the show. Omar (8)..... (smile) and said, "Yes, it was amazing!"

3 Read and write the correct form of the word (s) in brackets:

- He (clean) his new shoes last morning.
- The teacher (not be) at the library yesterday.
- They (have) dinner an hour ago.
- (Do) you enjoy the trip last week?
- Did you (finished) the report yesterday?

4 Circle the correct word:

- The father was a (farmer / fisherman / fighter).
- The old man was very (happy / worried / excited) about his sons.
- The bundle of sticks was (easy / hard / soft) to break.
- The moral of the story is to (work together / fight / work alone).



Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4

- 1 This chalice is made of
 a) clay b) gold c) alabaster d) silver
- 2 It was found in King Tutankhamun's
 a) palace b) tomb c) temple d) pyramid
- 3 It was used in special ceremonies like
 a) royal weddings b) birthday parties
 c) funeral rituals d) daily meals
- 4 People believed it helped the king live forever in the
 a) afterlife b) palace c) present d) desert

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1.5

- 1 The is the place and time of a story.
 a) moral b) end c) beginning d) setting
- 2 The chalice has two to make it easy to hold.
 a) covers b) handles c) symbols d) doors
- 3 Many students travel to study at international universities.
 a) abroad b) upstairs c) indoors d) inside

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

1.5

Grand — pharaohs — poor — unusual

Egypt is one of the oldest countries in the world. It has pyramids, ancient temples, (1)....., and amazing stories from history. Each year, tourists from many countries come to explore the wonders of this (2)..... land. In Egypt, history lives in every corner. One of the newest and most exciting places to visit is the (3)..... Egyptian Museum (GEM). Work on the museum took almost 20 years to finish.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

7

Egypt is a sunny country, making it ideal for solar energy. One major project is Benban Solar Park near Aswan, one of the world's largest solar stations. Built between 2018 and 2019, it has over 6 million panels and provides electricity to homes, schools, hospitals, and factories. The project is important because it saves money by using sunlight instead of expensive fuel, protects the environment, and brings jobs to Upper Egypt. Although some workers need training, it helps them learn new skills and improves local communities. It is a proud step toward a cleaner, better future.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The underlined pronoun "It" refers to
a) training b) sunlight c) money d) the project
- 2 Benban Solar Park provides to homes and schools.
a) fuel b) food c) electricity d) plastic

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 What makes Egypt ideal for solar energy?
- 4 When was Benban Solar Park built?
- 5 Summarize the text in two sentences.



Writing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1

- 1 village – a – in – lived – They – small.
.....

- 2 did – Where – travel – week – they – last?
.....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

4

- 1 What (does) you do yesterday?
- 2 He (walks) to school last week.

7 Punctuate the following:

4

- 1 Al Galala is a new city near the Red sea
.....
- 2 let's pack our clothes in these suitcases
.....

8 Write a text of about (50 - 60) words using the following guiding elements:

7

"Al Galala City"

Red Sea – view – overcrowded

.....

.....

.....

.....



Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4

- 1 Al Galala is a new city near the
 a) Nile River b) Red Sea c) desert d) mountains
- 2 It helps people move away from cities.
 a) overcrowded b) quiet c) ancient d) dangerous
- 3 From the cable cars, people can see a great view of the
 a) forest b) desert c) river d) mountain
- 4 The city is a center for and science.
 a) sports b) shopping c) education d) farming



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1.5

- 1 A is a flat area of land that is higher than the land around it.
 a) valley b) temple c) plateau d) desert
- 2 Egypt is building new cities that are clean, modern, and
 a) dangerous b) crowded c) polluted d) sustainable
- 3 You need a to travel to another country.
 a) panel b) notebook c) wallet d) passport

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

1.5

wisdom – strong – weaker – bundle

A long time ago in a small village, an old farmer lived with his three sons who were always fighting. As he grew (1)....., he worried about them. He showed them a (2)..... of sticks which they tried to break, but couldn't. He then gave them single sticks and they were able to easily break them. The farmer said, "Unity gives strength." The sons understood their father's (3)..... From that day on, they stopped fighting and worked together on the farm as one.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

7

One of the newest and most exciting places to visit is the Grand Egyptian Museum (GEM). Work on the museum took almost 20 years to complete. It is located near the Pyramids in Giza, and the museum was built in this spot, so visitors can enjoy both ancient and modern Egypt in one trip. Visitors can see statues, golden jewelry, tools, real mummies, and even the Solar Boat that belonged to King Khufu. The museum also uses modern technology, like smart screens and amazing shows, to help people learn in a fun way.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The underlined pronoun "It" refers to
a) mummies b) the museum c) Solar Boat d) technology
- 2 The Solar Boat belonged to King
a) Khabra b) Tut c) Ramses d) Khufu

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 Where does the Grand Egyptian Museum stand?
- 4 What can visitors see there?
- 5 Why does the museum use screens and amazing shows?



Writing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1

- 1 well – last – sleep – night – didn't – Ahmed.
.....
- 2 working – and – together – The sons – the lesson – started – understood.
.....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

4

- 1 We (don't) meet last week.
- 2 Did Sara (found) her bag?

7 Punctuate the following:

4

- 1 They couldn't break the bundle
.....
- 2 Was maher at home yesterday
.....

8 Write a text of about (50 - 60) words using the following guiding elements:

7

"Benban Solar Park "

largest – electricity – sustainable

.....

.....

.....

.....

A) Language Functions

1 Read and complete the dialogue:

Aswan – sunlight – Solar – important – stations

Mona: What are you doing?

Ingy: I'm reading an article about Benban (1) _____ Park.

Mona: What is it?

Ingy: It's one of the world's largest solar (2) _____.

Mona: Where is it?

Ingy: It's near (3) _____.

Mona: Is it (4) _____?

Ingy: Yes, it saves money by using (5) _____ instead of expensive fuel.

B) Vocabulary and Structures

2 Circle the odd one out and replace it with the correct word:

- | | | | | |
|---|---------|-----------|-----------|-------------|
| 1 | major | pollution | expensive | ideal |
| 2 | brought | found | fought | tied |
| 3 | mothers | suns | brothers | sisters |
| 4 | leading | national | peaceful | engineering |
| 5 | wonders | mummies | unusual | souvenirs |

3 Choose the correct answer:

- Before going on the trip, don't forget to (show – explore – pack) your clothes and important things.
- We went to the museum to see the new (exhibition – invention – plateau) of ancient Egyptian artifacts.
- We took a (taxi – bicycle – cable car) to the top of the mountain and enjoyed the amazing view.
- If you drop your phone on the floor, it might (break – call – shine).
- Climate change is a (small – funny – major) problem that affects the whole world.
- She didn't (bring – brings – bringing) her passport.
- They (was – were – did) at the library yesterday.
- Where (was – were – didn't) he stay last night?
- I (shouldn't – wasn't – didn't) tired yesterday.
- Did you (come – comes – coming) late this morning?

C) Reading Comprehension

4 Read the following passage, then answer the following questions:

A long time ago, in a small village along the Nile River, an old farmer lived with his three sons. The farm was big and gave them plenty of food, but the sons were always fighting about their work. As the old man grew weaker, he became worried. One day, he showed them a bundle of sticks that they couldn't break. Then he gave them single sticks which they broke easily. "These sticks are just like you," he said. "Together, you are strong. But alone, you can be broken easily. Unity gives strength." From that day on, the sons stopped fighting and worked together.

A Choose the correct answer:

- An old farmer lived with his three (daughters – friends – brothers – sons).
- Unity gives (sticks – strength – food – fighting).

B Answer the following questions:

- Where did the old farmer live?
- What were they fighting about?
- What happened at the end?

D) Writing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

- country – is – Egypt – sunny – a.
- argued – worked – who – about – They – the hardest.
- weren't – happy – yesterday – We.
- did – What – you – bring – the trip – for?
- fun – We – a – studied – way – in.

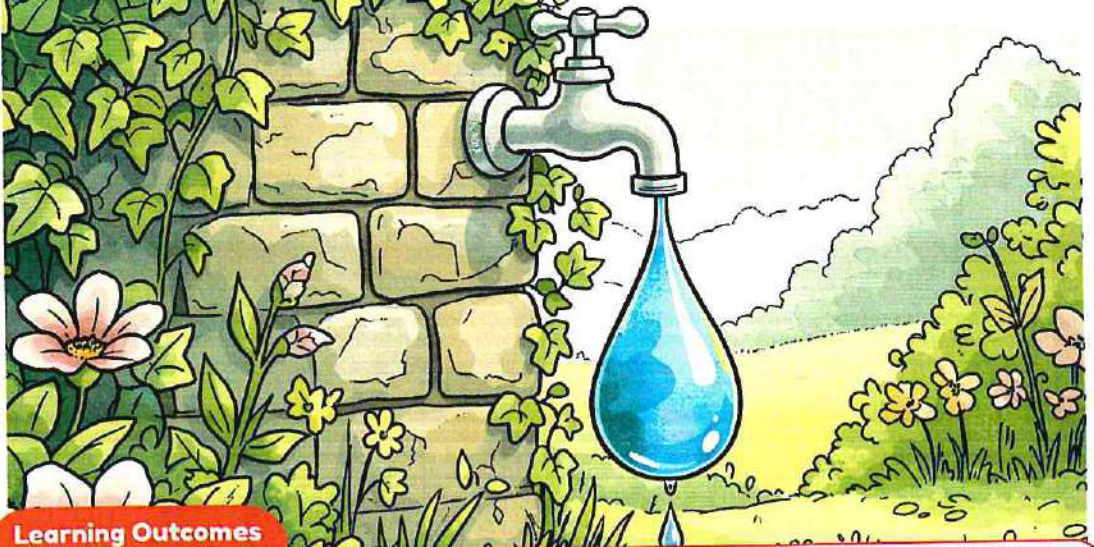
6 Write a text of FIVE (5) sentences using the following guiding elements:

"The Grand Egyptian Museum"

pharaohs – statues – mummies – technology – amazing shows

Story

The Water Savers



Learning Outcomes

• By the end of the story, the student will be able to:

• بنهاية القصة سيكون الطالب قادرًا على أن:

Listening and Speaking:

• participate in pair or group discussions about the story and its moral.

- يشارك في مناقشات ثنائية أو جماعية حول القصة والدروس المستفادة منها.

• ask and answer simple questions about characters and events.

- يطرح ويجيب عن أسئلة بسيطة حول الشخصيات والأحداث.

• role-play short conversations.

- يقوم بتبادل الأدوار في محادثات قصيرة.

• present ideas clearly with confidence during speaking activities.

- يعرض الأفكار بوضوح وثقة أثناء أنشطة التحدث.

Reading:

• identify the main characters, setting, and key events in a short story.

- يتعرف على الشخصيات الرئيسية والمكان والأحداث الرئيسية في قصة قصيرة.

• retell the sequence of events using their own words.

- يعيد سرد تسلسل الأحداث باستخدام كلماتهم الخاصة.

• understand the main idea and theme (e.g., environmental responsibility, teamwork).

- يفهم الفكرة الرئيسية والموضوع (على سبيل المثال، المسؤولية البيئية والعمل الجماعي).

Values:

• be a good citizen, work together, and take care of resources.

- يكون مواطنًا صالحًا، ويعمل في جماعة، ويهتم بالموارد.

Writing:

• make a poster or write a paragraph using story details and personal ideas.

- يصمم ملصقًا أو يكتب فقرة باستخدام تفاصيل القصة والأفكار الشخصية.

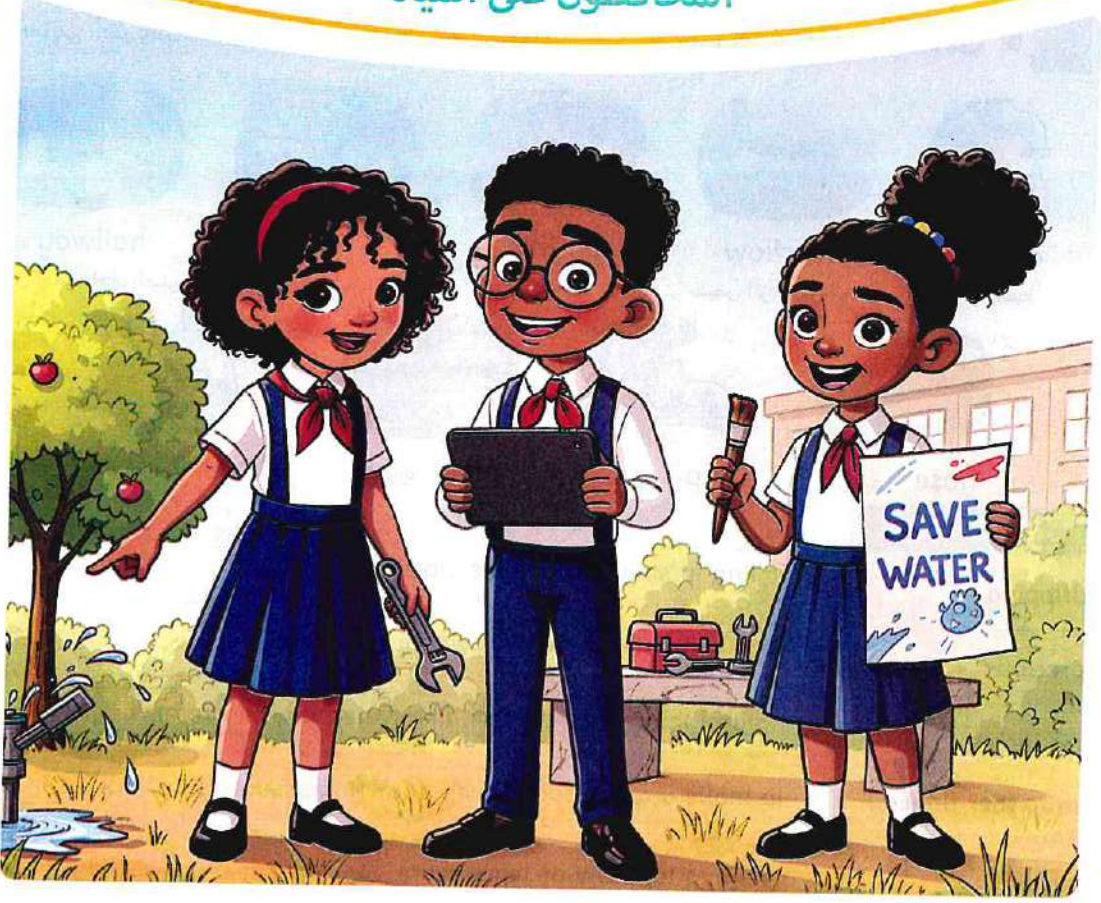
• organize ideas in a logical sequence (beginning, middle, end).

- ينظم الأفكار بتسلسل منطقي (البداية، المنتصف، النهاية).

The Water Savers

Title
العنوان

المحافظون على المياه



Warm-up

The Water Savers are a group of students who learn how to save water at home and school. They find ways to fix leaking taps, and use water wisely. They advise their friends to turn off water while brushing their teeth. They teach others how to save water and protect the environment. Together, they help their community to use less water and keep it clean for the future.

”موفرو المياه” مجموعة من الطلاب يتعلمون كيفية ترشيد استهلاك المياه في المنزل والمدرسة. يجدون طرقًا لإصلاح تسريبات الصنابير، واستخدام المياه بذكاء. ينصحون أصدقائهم بآغلاق المياه أثناء تنظيف أسنانهم. يُعلّمون الآخرين كيفية ترشيد استهلاك المياه وحماية البيئة. معًا، يُساعدون مجتمعهم على ترشيد استهلاك المياه والحفاظ عليها نظيفةً للمستقبل.



A

Vocabulary



Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر وقل:



drip
تقط



overflow
تفيض (تزداد عن الحد)



puddle
بركة مياه



leak
تسريب



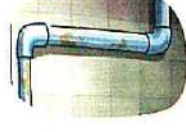
hallway
رواق (ممر داخل المبنى)



hose
خرطوم



tap
صنبور



pipe
ماسورة



drop
قطرة مياه

Definitions

dripping	تنقط	falling in small drops (like water from a tap) السقوط على شكل قطرات صغيرة (مثل الماء من الصنبور)
precious	قيم/ثمين	very valuable; something we must protect قيم للغاية؛ شيء يجب علينا حمايته
resources	موارد	natural things that we use, like water, air, or energy الأشياء الطبيعية التي نستخدمها، مثل الماء أو الهواء أو الطاقة
snap (her fingers)	تفرقع أصابعها (علامة على إبداع فكرة)	to make a quick sound with your fingers - a sign of having an idea إصدار صوت سريع بأصابعك - علامة على وجود فكرة
curious	فضول	wanting to know or learn more الرغبة في معرفة أو تعلم المزيد
leaky	مسرب للمياه	letting water (or air) escape through a hole or crack السماح للماء (أو الهواء) بالهروب من خلال ثقب أو شق
overflow	يفيض	to go over the edge (e.g. when a sink is too full) تجاوز الحافة (على سبيل المثال عندما يكون الحوض ممتلئًا جدًا)
puddles	برك مياه	small pools of water on the ground برك صغيرة من الماء على الأرض
cheerful	مبهج	happy, positive, bright, and friendly سعيد، إيجابي، مشرق، وودود
fix	يصلح	to repair something broken أن تصلح شيء مكسور
spread	ينشر (فكرة/خبر)	to move to more people or places (like news or ideas) أن تنتقل إلى المزيد من الأشخاص أو الأماكن (مثل الأخبار أو الأفكار)
mini-challenge	تحدي صغير	small, fun competitions to see who can do something best مسابقات صغيرة وممتعة لمعرفة من يمكنه القيام بشيء أفضل

B

Story Elements



Read and notice:

اقرأ ولاحظ:

Main characters

الشخصيات الرئيسية



Noor

نور



Ahmed

أحمد



Mr. Youssef

العم يوسف



Farida

فريدة

Setting

الإطار الزمني والمكاني

A school in Luxor
مدرسة في الأقصر

Recent school year
العام الدراسي الحالي



Story



Listen, read, and role play:

استمع، اقرأ وقم بتبادل الأدوار:



In a bright and busy school, three friends — Noor, Ahmed, and Farida — were always looking for ways to help. One sunny morning, they **noticed** something that made them stop. A tap in the school bathroom kept **dripping**, even when no one used it. In the garden, water **overflowed** from a broken **pipe** and formed little **puddles** near the **walkway**.

في مدرسة مشرقة ومزدحمة، كان هناك ثلاثة أصدقاء - نُور، وأحمد، وفريدة - يبحثون دائماً عن طرق لمساعدة الآخرين. في صباح مشمس، استوقفهم شيئاً ما لاحظوه. كان هناك صنوبر في حمام المدرسة يقطر الماء حتى عندما لا يستخدمه أحد. وفي الحديقة، كانت المياه تفيض من ماسورة مكسورة وتكوّن بركاً صغيرة قرب الممشى.

Extra vocabulary

noticed

لاحظ

dripping

تقطر

overflowed

فاضت

pipe

ماسورة

puddles

برك مياه

walkway

ممشى



"We waste too much water," Noor said, **shaking** her head. She watched the **drops** fall one after another, knowing they were too **precious** to waste.

Ahmed said. "We need to take better care of our **resources**," he agreed. "We **can't afford** to be careless."

Farida, always full of ideas, **snapped** her fingers. "Let's do something about it! We can be **Water Savers**! We can show everyone that small **actions** matter.

قالت نور وهي تهز رأسها: «نحن نهدر الكثير من الماء.» كانت تراقب قطرات الماء وهي تسقط واحدة تلو الأخرى، وهي تعلم أن الماء ثمين جدًا ولا يجب أن نضيعه.

قال احمد. و وافق على ذلك قائلا: «نحن بحاجة إلى أن نحافظ على مواردنا بشكل أفضل.» ولا يمكننا تحمل عواقب إهمالنا. فريدة، التي كانت دائمًا مليئة بالأفكار، طرقت بأصابعها وقالت: «هيا نفعل شيئًا يمكننا أن نكون محافظون على الماء!

يمكننا أن نرى الجميع أن الأفعال الصغيرة تصنع فرقًا كبيرًا.»

Extra vocabulary

shaking	تهز	drops	قطرات	precious	قيم / ثمين
resources	موارد	can't afford	لا يمكن تحمل	snapped	فرقت / طرقت
savers	موفرون/محافظون	actions	أحداث		



They went to their teacher's **office** and explained their **plan**. "We want to do a **project** to help our school use water **wisely**," Noor explained. Their teacher smiled brightly. "That's a wonderful idea. Go for it — and let me know how I can help."

ذهبوا الأطفال إلى مكتب المعلمة وشرحوا لها خططهم.

قالت نور: «نريد أن نقوم بمشروع يساعد مدرستنا على استخدام الماء بحكمة.»

ابتسمت المعلمة ابتسامة براقة وقالت:

«إنها فكرة رائعة! نثذوها، وأخبروني كيف يمكنني أن أساعدكم.»

Extra vocabulary

office

مكتب

plan

خطة

project

مشروع

wisely

بحكمة



The next day, the three friends got to work. They started by walking around the school with a **notebook**, a camera, and **curious** eyes. Noor wrote down everything she noticed: **leaky** taps, students leaving water running while washing their hands, and **hoses** left on too long in the garden.

فى اليوم التالى، بدأ الأصدقاء الثلاثة العمل.

بدأوا بالتجول فى المدرسة ومعهم دفتر ملاحظات، وكاميرا، وعيون فضولية. كانت نور تكتب كل ما تلاحظه: صنابير تسرب الماء، طلاب يتركون الماء يجرى وهم يغسلون أيديهم، وخراطيم مياه تُترك تعمل لوقت طويل فى الحديقة.

Extra vocabulary

notebook

دفتر ملاحظات

curious

فضولى

leaky

مسرب

hoses

خراطيم



Ahmed used his tablet to take photos of the problems so they could show them later in their **presentations**. Farida, the **artist**, brought out her colored markers and made bright, **cheerful** posters. One read: "Turn off the tap while brushing!" Another said: "Every drop **counts**. Fix **leaks** fast!"

استخدم أحمد التابلت الخاص به ليلتقط صورًا للمشكلات حتى يعرضوها لاحقًا في عروضهم التقديمية.

أما فريدا، الفنانة، فأحضرت أقلامها الملونة وصنعت لافتات مشرقة ومبهجة.

كانت إحدى اللافتات تقول:

«أغلق الصنبور أثناء تنظيف أسنانك!»

وأخرى كتبت عليها:

«كل قطرة مهمة... أصلح التسريبات بسرعة!»

Extra vocabulary

presentations

عروض تقديمية

artist

فنان

cheerful

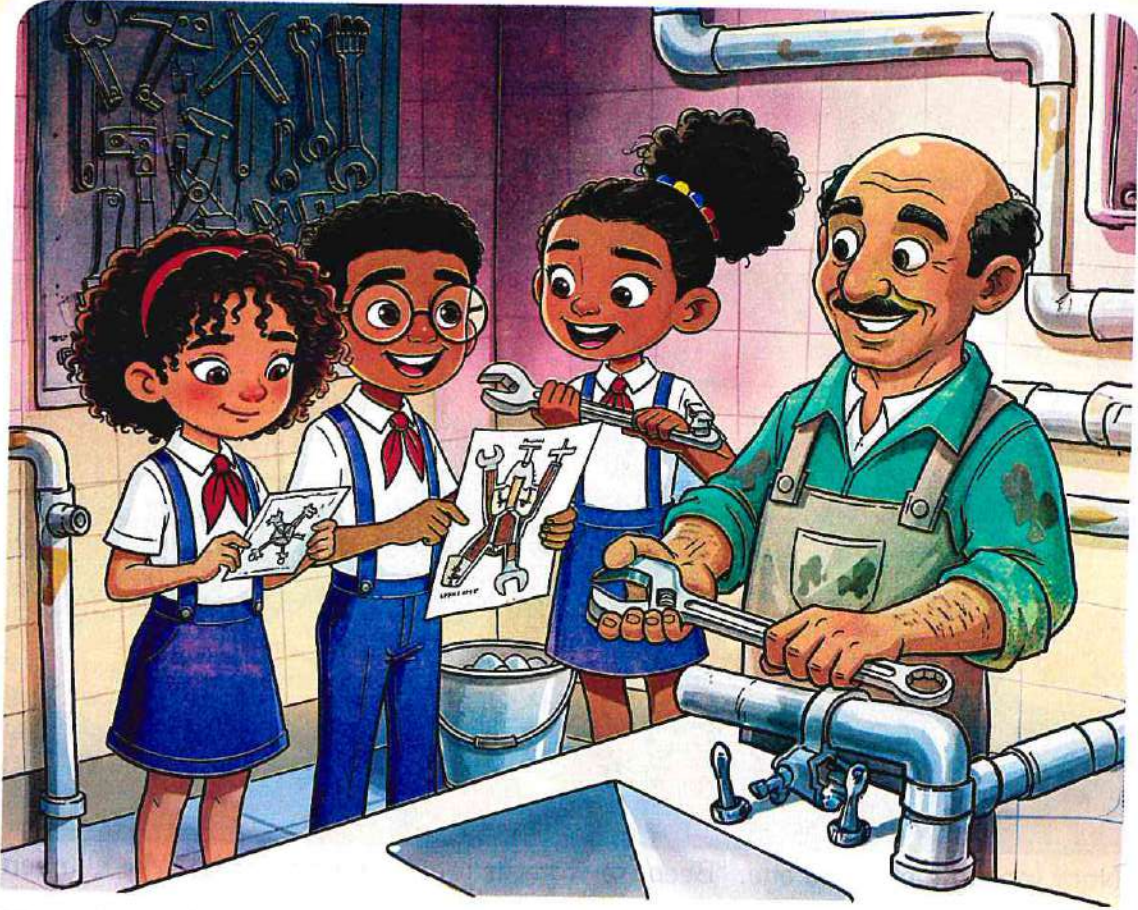
مبهج

counts

تهم

leaks

تسريبات



They also spoke to the school **cleaner**, Mr. Youssef, who was **surprised** but **pleased** to see the students taking action. "I'd love your help," he said as they watched him fix a leaking **sink**. He explained how a small drip could waste **liters** of water each day.

The kids listened carefully and learned a lot. But not everyone understood their **role**. One afternoon, a classmate said to them **unkindly** near the **hallway**. "Why do you care about water so much? It's just a few drops."

تحدّثوا أيضًا مع العم يوسف وهو عامل النظافة الخاص بالمدرسة، والذي كان مندهشًا لكنه كان سعيدًا عندما رأى الطلاب اتخاذ الإجراءات. قال وهم يشاهدوه يصلح حوضًا مسرّيًا: «سأكون سعيدًا بمساعدتكم!» ثم أوضح لهم أن القطرة الصغيرة يمكن أن تُهدّر لترات من الماء كل يوم. استمع الاطفال جيّدًا وتعلّموا الكثير. لكن لم يكن الجميع يفهموا ادوارهم. في أحد الأيام، قال لهم أحد زملائهم بالقرب من الممر بطريقة غير لطيفة:

«لماذا تهتمون بالماء كثيرًا؟ إنها فقط بضعة قطرات!»

Extra vocabulary

cleaner	عامل نظافة	surprised	مندهش	pleased	مسرور
sink	حوض	liters	لترات	unkindly	بطريقة غير لطيفة
hallway	رواق / ممر	role	دور		



Noor looked him in the eye. "Because water is life," she said **firmly**. "We all need it, and we all need to protect it".

Her friends stood beside her, **proud** and quiet. They didn't let the **bullying** stop them. They believed in what they were doing. Soon, their **message** began to **spread**. The school hung their posters in bathrooms, classrooms, and near garden taps. Teachers took a few minutes each day to talk about how to save water. Some classes even had **mini-challenges** to see who could save the most!

One morning, the head teacher gave the children, Noor, Ahmed, and Farida certificates of achievement for their hard work. From that day on, everyone at the school became a Water Saver.

نور نظرت إليه في عينيه وقالت بشكل صارم: «لأن الماء هو الحياة. كلنا نحتاجه، وكلنا يجب أن نحمله».

وقف أصدقاؤها بجانبها، فخورين وهادئين. لم يسمحوا للتنمر أن توقفهم. فقد كانوا يؤمنون بما يفعلونه. وسرعان ما بدأ كلامهم ينتشر. علقت المدرسة ملصقاتهم في الحمامات، والفصول، وقرب صنابير الحديقة. أخذ المعلمون بضع دقائق كل يوم للحديث عن كيفية توفير الماء. وحتى أن بعض الفصول اقامت تحديات صغيرة لمعرفة من يستطيع توفير أكبر كمية من الماء!

وفي صباح أحد الأيام، أعطى مدير المدرسة للأطفال نور وأحمد وفريدة شهادات إنجاز لعملهم الجاد. ومنذ ذلك اليوم فصاعدًا، أصبح كل فرد في المدرسة موفرًا للمياه.

Extra vocabulary

firmly	بشكل صارم/حاد	proud	فخور	bullying	التنمر
message	رسالة	spread	ينشر	mini-challenges	تحديات صغيرة

1 Read and write who said this:

SB

- 1 "We waste too much water."
- 2 "We need to take better care of our resources."
- 3 "Let's do something about it! We can be Water Savers!"
- 4 "That's a wonderful idea. Go for it - and let me know how I can help."
- 5 "I'd love your help."

2 Match the words in column (A) with their meanings in column (B):

SB

☐ dripping	a. things we use to live (e.g., water)
☐ resources	b. having holes or cracks
☐ leaky	c. flowing in small drops

3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Noor, Ahmed, and Farida were worried about the water because they
 a) wanted to play in the puddles b) wanted to save water
 c) disliked the school garden d) wanted to skip class
- 2 Farida used to make posters.
 a) tablets b) colored markers c) notebooks d) cameras
- 3 Mr. Youssef supported the students because too.
 a) he wanted a break b) he cared about saving water
 c) the teacher asked him d) he liked their posters
- 4 What did the posters say?
 a) "Water is boring." b) "Brush faster!"
 c) "Turn off the tap while brushing!" d) "Leave the hose on!"
- 5 Mr. Youssef is the school
 a) teacher b) mechanic c) cleaner d) driver
- 6 What is the main message of the story?
 a) Always listen to teachers.
 b) Water should not be used.
 c) Teamwork and small actions can make a big difference.
 d) School should be more fun.

4 Read and write T (True) or F (False):

- 1 Farida's posters had messages like "Every drop counts". ()
- 2 The teacher did not support the students' plan. ()
- 3 The school skipped the students' posters and didn't use them. ()
- 4 Mr. Youssef helped the students fix a leaking sink. ()
- 5 Noor said, "Water is life" when a classmate bullied her. ()
- 6 Some classes had mini-challenges to save water. ()

5 Read and put the events of the story in order:

SB

- ☐ The teacher was excited about the project.
- ☐ The friends see water leaking in the bathroom.
- ☐ The students make posters and take photos.
- ☐ A classmate bullies the Water Savers group.
- ☐ Noor, Ahmed, and Farida talk to Mr. Youssef, the cleaner.
- ☐ The school starts water-saving challenges.

6 Complete the story summary with these words:

SB

teamwork — precious — spread — document — wasted

In a school near Luxor, three friends — Noor, Ahmed, and Farida — notice water being (1) from leaky taps and broken pipes. Concerned about saving this (2) resource, they start a project called "Water Savers." They make posters with helpful messages about the problem, and learn from the school cleaner how small leaks waste a lot of water. Despite some bullying, they go on. Their efforts (3), helping students and teachers to save water through daily actions and fun challenges. The story shows how (4) and small actions can make a big difference.

7 Answer the following questions:

- 1 Why is saving water important?
.....
- 2 How can we save water at school and at home?
.....
- 3 Are Farida, Noor, and Ahmed good friends?
.....
- 4 Is the role of Mr. Youssef important? Why?
.....
- 5 If we don't care about dripping taps, what will happen?
.....

Final Revision and Tests

- 
- A vibrant illustration of a young girl with brown hair in a ponytail, wearing a pink hoodie with a unicorn on it and large round glasses. She is sitting at a wooden desk, smiling and gesturing with her left hand while holding a pencil over an open book with her right hand. A laptop with various colorful stickers is open in front of her. To the right is a pink cup of coffee with steam. The background features a large window with a view of a blue sky, clouds, and trees, with string lights hanging above. On a shelf to the left, there is a small globe and a potted plant.
- Revision on Vocabulary
 - Revision on Grammar
 - Exercises on Each Unit
 - Conjugation of Verbs
 - 15 Final Tests
 - 5 Al-Azhar Tests
 - Story Exercises

Units 1 and 2



A) Revision on Vocabulary

Unit 1

buy souvenirs	يشترى الهدايا التذكارية	make furniture	يصنع الأثاث	walk to a small museum	يمشي إلى متحف صغير
play music	يعزف موسيقى	visit ancient sites	يزور المواقع الأثرية	take photos	يلتقط صورًا
exciting	مثير	streets	شوارع	lamps	مصابيح
necklace	عقد	furniture	أثاث	culture	ثقافة
coral reefs	الشعاب المرجانية	snorkel	يغطس باستخدام أنبوب التنفس	mangrove trees	أشجار المانجروف
protected area	منطقة محمية	marine life	الحياة البحرية	landscapes	المناظر الطبيعية
clear	صافي/واضح	turtles	السلاحف	environment	البيئة
peaceful	هادئ / مسالم	rules	قواعد	Bedouins	البدو
voice recordings	تسجيلات صوتية	responsibilities	مسئوليات	fishing nets	شباك الصيد
looms	أنوال (آلات حياكة القماش أو السجاد)	sea breeze	نسيم البحر	villagers	قرويون / سكان القرية
fishermen	صيادو السمك	wooden boats	قوارب خشبية	salute the flag	التعلم يُحيى
pack schoolbag	يُرتب / يجهز حقيبة المدرسة	play in the playground	يلعب في ساحة المدرسة	take out books	يخرج الكتب من الحقيبة
anthem	نشيد	national	وطني	tricky	صعب/خادع
Arabic	اللغة العربية	math	الرياضيات	English	اللغة الإنجليزية
science	العلوم	social studies	الدراسات الاجتماعية	computer	الحاسب الآلي
P.E.	التربية البدنية	carpet	سجادة	rug	سجادة صغيرة

Unit 2

natural fertilizer	سماد طبيعي	hibiscus	كركديه	weeds	حشائش ضارة
basil	ريحان	pull out	يقتلع	water	يسقى النباتات
plant	يزرع	herbs	أعشاب	mint tea	شاي بالنعناع
insects	حشرات	olive	زيتون	oil	زيت
shade	ظل	weather	طقس	fresh (adj.)	طازج
waves	أمواج	outside	بالخارج	skeleton	هيكل عظمي
dry	جاف	heat	حرارة	experts	خبراء
rare (adj.)	نادر	waterfalls	شلالات	ibis	أبو منجل
palm trees	أشجار النخيل	whales	حيتان	camera	كاميرا
sea turtle	سلحفاة بحرية	distance	مسافة	beak	منقار
habitat	موطن	national park	منتزه وطني	sand dunes	كتبان رملية
guide	مرشد	history	تاريخ	incredible (adj.)	لا يُصدق / مذهل
flavor	نكهة	parsley	يُقَدِّس	active (adj.)	نشط
news	أخبار	indoors	في الداخل	outdoors	في الخارج



on Vocabulary Units 1 and 2

Unit 1

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Ras Mohamed is a area, so people must care for it.
a) damaged b) protected c) bored d) ugly
- 2 Fady starts his school day by the flag.
a) reading b) folding c) saluting d) washing
- 3 Visitors can learn about the of the local people.
a) table b) culture c) leave d) exam
- 4 After school, Fady his homework.
a) makes b) forgets c) ignores d) does
- 5 A "....." is a tool made of rope or string used to catch fish.
a) brush b) fishing net c) basket d) hook
- 6 Math is my favorite
a) custom b) subject c) color d) hoppy
- 7 Farmers in Salma's village the crops.
a) harvest b) hate c) fish d) weave
- 8 In the morning, students sing the national
a) music b) poem c) anthem d) line
- 9 To "....." is to color cloth or wool using a special liquid.
a) dye b) weave c) eat d) climb
- 10 A/An "....." is a machine for making cloth or carpets.
a) oven b) ladder c) loom d) phone

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

A) coral reefs – snorkel – rule – landscapes

Ras Mohamed is a famous national park in Egypt. It is known for its beautiful (1)....., colorful fish, and clear blue sea. People from all over the world visit Ras Mohamed to swim, (2)....., and dive. It is a protected area, so people must take care of the land and animals. Ras Mohamed has peaceful (3)..... that make it a great place for nature lovers.

B) house – dressed – saluting – shower

My day starts early. I wake up around 6:30 a.m., get (1)....., and have a quick breakfast, usually bread, cheese, and fruit. At 7:00, I leave the (2)..... My dad drives me to school. School begins at 7:30. We start the day by standing in line, (3)..... the flag, and singing the national anthem. Then we go to our classroom and begin our lessons.

Unit 2

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Farmers use to help crops grow naturally without chemicals.
a) hibiscus b) natural fertilizer c) weeds d) pollution
- 2 To make traditional Egyptian, you need fresh mint leaves and hot water.
a) olive oil b) basil c) herbs d) mint tea
- 3 like basil and rosemary are often used in cooking.
a) Insects b) Herbs c) Sand dunes d) Waves
- 4 Since ancient times, people used olives to make
a) water b) shade c) oil d) herbs
- 5 My brother and I have a plant; we it every day.
a) oil b) water c) herbs d) shade
- 6 We sit under trees to rest in the
a) shade b) oil c) grow d) water
- 7 The in Egypt is famous for its fossilized whale skeletons.
a) National Park b) Eastern Desert
c) Valley of the Kings d) Valley of the Whales
- 8 The streets are because it is raining heavily.
a) dry b) wet c) dusty d) hot
- 9 Always plants gently to avoid damaging their roots.
a) pull out b) harm c) water d) eat
- 10 We wear hats to ourselves from the sun.
a) heat b) clean c) grow d) protect

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

A)

flows – flooded – soil – crocodiles

The Nile is the longest river in the world. It (1)..... through Egypt from south to north. Many animals live in and near the river. Big fish like Nile perch and tilapia swim in the water. (2)..... live in the river too. In the past, the Nile (3)..... and brought good soil for farmers to grow crops.

B)

guide – skeletons – history – exhibit

Last Thursday, our class visited Wadi El Rayan National Park. A kind (1)..... named Mr. Tarek showed us the lakes, waterfalls, and palm trees. We also went to Wadi El-Hitan and saw the (2)..... of ancient whales. Before leaving, Mr. Ahmed found my camera under the (3)..... outside the museum. The trip was full of nature, fun, and history.

Units 1 and 2



B) Revision on Grammar

Unit 1

The Present Simple Tense

Usage:

الاستخدام:

- We use the present simple tense to talk about habits and routines.

نستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط للتحدث عن العادات والروتين.

Affirmative form:

صيغة الإثبات:

I/ We/ You/ They + (inf.) ... الفعل في المصدر

- e.g. We visit our uncle every weekend.

He/ She/ It + (inf.) ... الفعل في المصدر + (s/es/ies)

- e.g. It rains a lot in winter.

Negative form:

صيغة النفي:

I/ We/ You/ They + don't + (inf.) ... الفعل في المصدر

- e.g. Bedouins don't live in Cairo.

He/ She/ It + doesn't + (inf.) ... الفعل في المصدر

- e.g. Samah doesn't like milk.

Yes/No question:

السؤال بـ(هل):

Question

السؤال

Do

Does

I/ you/ we/ they

he/ she/ it

... الفعل في المصدر (inf.) ?

Answer

الإجابة

Yes,

No,

subject (الفعل)

do/ does.

don't/ doesn't.

- e.g. A: Do you go to the club?

B: Yes, I do.

Or

B: No, I don't.

- e.g. A: Does Nada sleep early?

B: Yes, she does.

Or

B: No, she doesn't.

Wh- question:

السؤال باستخدام كلمات الاستفهام:

Wh- word

كلمة الاستفهام

do

does

I/ you/ we/ they

he/ she/ it

... الفعل في المصدر (inf.) ?

- e.g. A: Where does he work? B: He works in a factory.

The Present Continuous Tense

- We use the present continuous tense for actions happening now or near the moment of speaking.

نحن نستخدم زمن المضارع المستمر للأفعال التي تحدث الآن أو بالقرب من لحظة التحدث.

Affirmative form:

صيغة الإثبات:

I	am	(inf.) + ing + ...
He/ She/ It	is	
You/ We/ They	are	

e.g. - Ahmed **is playing** football now. - We **are visiting** Grandma this weekend.

Negative form:

صيغة النفي:

I	am not	(inf.) + ing + ...
He/ She/ It	is not (isn't)	
You/ We/ They	are not (aren't)	

e.g. They **are not playing** in the garden.

Yes/No question:

السؤال بنعم/لا:

Question	Is	he/ she/ it	(inf.) + ing + ...?
	Are	you/ we/ they	
Answers	Yes,	subject	am/ is/ are
	No,		am not/ isn't/ aren't

Wh- question:

السؤال باستخدام كلمات الاستفهام:

Wh- word	is	he/ she/ it	(inf.) + ing + ...?
	are	you/ we/ they	

e.g. A: What **is he doing** now? B: He **is eating** lunch.

Practice



on Grammar Units 1 and 2

Unit 1

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Farmers natural fertilizers for their crops.
a) uses b) use c) using d) to use
- 2 The caracal small animals in the Eastern Desert.
a) hunts b) hunt c) are hunting d) do hunt
- 3 Basil grow well in dry weather.
a) isn't b) aren't c) doesn't d) don't
- 4 We out useful herbs like mint.
a) isn't pulling b) aren't pull c) don't pull d) doesn't pull
- 5 sea turtles lay eggs on sand dunes?
a) Did b) Does c) Do d) Are
- 6 Does the ibis a curved beak?
a) have b) has c) had d) having
- 7 Why do sea turtles clean oceans?
a) needs b) needing c) need d) needed
- 8 When experts update their research?
a) does b) is c) are d) do
- 9 Tourists visit the Valley of the Whales at night.
a) aren't b) don't c) doesn't d) isn't
- 10 Do waves the rocky shore?
a) reach b) reaches c) is reach d) to reach

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 Do farmers (planting) basil in winter?
- 2 Olive trees (doesn't) grow in shallow soil.
- 3 Experts (studies) the habitat of the ibis in wetlands.
- 4 The sea turtle (swim) with its flippers in the ocean.
- 5 (Do) the caracal sleep in caves?
- 6 Hana (not/like) to drive her car at night.
- 7 Where (do) the lion live?
- 8 This old house (have) a very special design.
- 9 They often (plays) tennis on Fridays.
- 10 What (does) farmers use instead of chemicals?

Unit 2

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Youssef an email about the weather.
a) is writing b) am writing c) are writing d) to write
- 2 Farmers are their plants this month.
a) grows b) grew c) growing d) to grow
- 3 I a jacket today because it's cold.
a) 's wearing b) wears c) 'm wearing d) 're wearing
- 4 Waves reaching the shore.
a) don't b) aren't c) isn't d) doesn't
- 5 The student homework now.
a) do b) are doing c) is doing d) doing
- 6 How the weather changing in Egypt?
a) does b) are c) is d) can
- 7 they traveling by plane?
a) Are b) Is c) Do d) Have
- 8 Who the email now?
a) sending b) send c) is sending d) to send
- 9 We're water because it's too hot.
a) drinks b) drink c) drank d) drinking
- 10 When are you us, Grandma?
a) visits b) visiting c) visited d) visit

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 The wind is (blow) strongly in Cairo.
- 2 People (be) staying indoors because of the rain.
- 3 The sun (not shine) in Alexandria today.
- 4 These shops aren't (close) early tonight.
- 5 What (be) happening around the town?
- 6 Where are people (stay) during the rain?
- 7 Youssra (looked) out of the window right now.
- 8 Birds aren't (flies) today because of the storm.
- 9 (Does) it snowing in London?
- 10 Are children (plays) outside in Aswan?

Units 3 and 4



A) Revision on Vocabulary

Unit 3

paramedic	مسعف	architect	مهندس معماري	water resources engineer	مهندس موارد مائية
mechanic	ميكانيكي	tailor	خياط	delivery person	موصل طلبات
street cleaners	عمال نظافة الشوارع	traffic officer	ضابط مرور	community	مجتمع
research	بحث	vehicles	مركبات	emergency	حالة طوارئ
brave (adj.)	شجاع	signs	لافتات	thorns	أشواك
petals	بتلات	unpleasant (adj.)	غير سار	cactus	صبار
sharp (adj.)	حاد	dry (adj.)	جاف	proud (adj.)	فخور
rose	وردة	sweet (adj.)	حلو	creature	مخلوق
bright (adj.)	ساطع / لامع	rough (adj.)	خشن	ugly (adj.)	قيح
food bank	بنك الطعام	seasons	فصول	gently	بلطف
weak (adj.)	ضعيف	surprised (adj.)	متفاجئ	refreshed (adj.)	متنّش
embarrassed	محرج	brilliant (adj.)	مثالي	scientist	عالم
learning	تعلم	United States	الولايات المتحدة	amazing (adj.)	مدهش
expert	خبير	chemistry	كيمياء	nanoscience	علم النانو
tiny (adj.)	صغير جدًا	leftovers	بقايا الطعام	scientific (adj.)	علمي
achievements	إنجازات	gold particles	جزيئات الذهب	cancer	سرطان
discoveries	اكتشافات	awards	جوائز	hero	بطل

Unit 4

materials	مواد	granite	جرانيت	colored stones	أحجار ملونة
gold	ذهب	clay	صلصال / طين	papyrus	نبات البردي
bricks	طوب	temple	معبد	amulet	تميمة
materials	مواد/خامات	survive	ينجو	ancient (adj.)	قديم / أثري
decorate	يزين	wrapped	لف / غلف	modern (adj.)	حديث
linen	كتان	scroll	مخطوطة	unbelievable (adj.)	مدهش
buildings	مبانٍ	statues	تماثيل	sculptures	منحوتات/ تماثيل
flax	نبات الكتان	mummies	موميאות	pots	أواني / أوعية
jars	برطمانات	stones	أحجار	jewelry	مجوهرات
natural (adj.)	طبيعي	fascinating (adj.)	(رائع) جذاب	recent (adj.)	حديث
solar power	الطاقة الشمسية	pollute	يلوث	solar panels	الألواح الشمسية
harm	يؤذي	climate	المناخ	gas	غاز
endless (adj.)	أبدى (لا نهاية لها)	sunshine	نور الشمس	planet	كوكب
oil	النفط (الزيت)	devices	الأجهزة	fuel	وقود
climate change	تغير المناخ	actions	أفعال / تصرفات	Energy Heroes	أبطال الطاقة
unsafe (adj.)	غير آمن	gold	ذهب	rock	صخرة
minerals	معادن	natural gas	غاز طبيعي	steel	الفولاذ / الصلب
natural resources	موارد طبيعية	electricity	كهرباء	Ancient Egyptians	المصريون القدماء
valuable (adj.)	قيم	Western Desert	الصحراء الغربية	ground	أرض
metals	معادن	the High Dam	السد العالي	huge (adj.)	ضخم
flooding	فيضان	irrigation	الري	drought	جفاف
accurate (adj.)	دقيق / صحي	tips	نصائح	grains	حبوب

Practice



on Vocabulary Units 3 and 4

Unit 3

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 To is to look for information to learn more about something.
a) teach b) control c) research d) think
- 2 When someone is, he is not scared of something.
a) excited b) brave c) afraid d) tired
- 3 We use to travel for long distances.
a) community b) paramedics c) resources d) vehicles
- 4 A brings us different packages.
a) computer b) cleaner c) delivery person d) paramedic
- 5 My uncle is a/an, he designs amazing buildings.
a) mechanic b) tailor c) cleaner d) architect
- 6 She's at the She's making a new dress.
a) mechanic's b) paramedic's c) tailor's d) doctor's
- 7 This is the who is fixing Dad's car.
a) tailor b) mechanic c) paramedic d) officer
- 8 The sharp points that grow on the stem are called
a) leaves b) petals c) thorns d) roots
- 9 The smell of the trash can is
a) great b) nice c) unpleasant d) sweet
- 10 The cactus grows in the
a) river b) lake c) farm d) desert

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

A)

achievements – scientific – tiny – gold

Dr. El-Sayed became a top expert in chemistry and nanoscience. Nanoscience is super cool because it's about studying (1)..... things, like materials much smaller than a human hair! He even had an important (2)..... idea named after him, called "El-Sayed's Rule". One of his biggest (3)..... is his work with tiny gold particles. He found out how these "tiny nanoparticles" can be used to help doctors find and even treat some types of cancer.

B)

posters – problem – careful – solution

The traffic near the school is noisy and dangerous. To solve this (1)....., students can take action. First, they should ask their teacher to let them make (2)..... to hang around the park. These posters can remind drivers to be (3)..... . When everyone helps, things get better. The signs could say, "Drive slowly!" to encourage safer driving. Additionally, students should walk or ride bikes instead of relying on cars.

Unit 4

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 power needs a lot of sunshine to be produced.
a) Gas b) Oil c) Solar d) Water
- 2 Gas and Oil can the Earth.
a) harm b) help c) clean d) recycle
- 3 When something is, it's from a very long time ago.
a) ancient b) modern c) new d) creative
- 4 Clay and granite are
a) magnets b) temples c) bricks d) materials
- 5 Ancient Egyptians used for writing.
a) gold b) iron c) bricks d) papyrus
- 6 I live in Aswan. There are many ancient here.
a) bricks b) gold c) materials d) temples
- 7 Ancient Egyptians used to make pots to cook in.
a) papyrus b) temples c) bricks d) clay
- 8 Don't water when you brush your teeth.
a) use b) harm c) waste d) close
- 9 Gases from cars and buses can the air.
a) pollute b) clean c) charge d) protect
- 10 The High Dam is a wall that crosses the Nile River.
a) tiny b) small c) huge d) broken

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

A)

gas – jewelry – future – minerals

Egypt has many valuable things underground. We call these things (1)..... . Oil and natural (2)..... are important resources that give us energy. Gold is used to make (3)..... . Iron is a strong metal. We use it to build cars and big buildings around the country.

B)

supplies – natural – sand – factory

Man-made resources are things people create using (1)..... materials. For example, plastic is made from oil and used for bottles, toys, and school (2)..... . Glass is made from (3)..... and used in windows, mirrors, and cups. One interesting resource I learned about is bricks, made by mixing clay and water, then dried or baked. They are used to build houses, schools, and walls.



Unit 3

can / can't / able to

- We use "can / able to" to talk about ability in the present.
نستخدم "can / able to" بمعنى "يستطيع أن" للحديث عن القدرة في المضارع.
- We use "can't" when we can't or aren't allowed to do something.
نستخدم "can / can't" بمعنى "لا يستطيع أن" عندما لا يمكننا فعل شيء ما.

يستطيع أن / يستطيع ألا (can / can't)

Affirmative form:

صيغة الإثبات:

Subject (الفاعل) + can + (inf.) المصدر في المصدر

e.g. I can bring some garbage bags.

Negative form:

صيغة النفي:

Subject (الفاعل) + can't + (inf.) المصدر في المصدر

e.g. We can't cross the road safely in the morning.

Question form:

صيغة السؤال:

Can + subject (الفاعل) + (inf.) المصدر في المصدر?

e.g. A: Can you hang out posters about the park?

B: Yes, I can. / No, I can't.

able to يقدر أن

Affirmative form:

صيغة الإثبات:

Subject (الفاعل) + (am/ is/ are) + (able to) + (inf.) المصدر في المصدر

e.g. My sister is able to ride a bike.

Unit 4

Modal verbs: must / mustn't / should / shouldn't

We use must to say something is very important or a rule.

نحن نستخدم كلمة "must" لنقول إن شيئاً ما مسموح به.

We use must + not to say something is not allowed.

نحن نستخدم كلمة "must + not" لنقول أن شيئاً ما غير مسموح به.

We use should to give advice or a good idea.

نحن نستخدم "should" لتقديم النصيحة أو فكرة جيدة.

We use should + not + to say something is not a good idea.

نحن نستخدم "should + not" لنقول إن شيئاً ما ليس فكرة جيدة.

must / mustn't يجب أن / يجب ألا**Affirmative form:**

صيغة الإثبات:

Subject (الفاعل) + must + (inf.) المصدر في المصدر . .

e.g. You must turn off the lights to save energy.

Negative form:

صيغة النفي:

Subject (الفاعل) + mustn't (must not) + (inf.) المصدر في المصدر . .

e.g. You mustn't throw garbage on the ground.

should/ shouldn't ينبغي أن / ينبغي ألا**Affirmative form:**

صيغة الإثبات:

Subject (الفاعل) + should + (inf.) المصدر في المصدر . .

e.g. You should walk to school if it's close.

Negative form:

صيغة النفي:

Subject (الفاعل) + shouldn't + (inf.) المصدر في المصدر . .

e.g. You shouldn't waste water when washing your hands.

Practice



on Grammar Units 3 and 4

Unit 3

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 I can a bike.
a) rides b) ride c) rode d) riding
- 2 she swim very well?
a) Do b) Can c) Are d) Is
- 3 You can't outside without a jacket.
a) went b) go c) going d) goes
- 4 I am able drive a car when I'm older.
a) to b) on c) too d) in
- 5 We can soccer after school.
a) plays b) play c) played d) playing
- 6 She watch TV until she finishes homework.
a) don't b) able to c) can't d) do
- 7 They solve math problems easily. They are so smart.
a) aren't b) can't c) can d) doesn't
- 8 We able to visit the museum.
a) am b) is c) are d) do
- 9 Are you able to this riddle?
a) solve b) solving c) solves d) solved
- 10 You can my pencil.
a) borrow b) borrowed c) borrows d) to borrow

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 He can (reads) long books now.
- 2 I (can) speak French. I need more practice.
- 3 We can all (visited) the museum today.
- 4 Dogs (can't) bark loudly.
- 5 (Be) you able to fix your bike?
- 6 We (can) play music too loudly. It's not polite.
- 7 I (be/not) to sleep. It's too hot.
- 8 My sister (can't) draw beautiful pictures. She's an artist.
- 9 She is able to (went) to school on foot.
- 10 You (can) run near the pool. It is unsafe.

Unit 4

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 You must to your teacher.
a) listens b) listened c) listen d) listening
- 2 You run on the road.
a) must b) should c) mustn't d) aren't
- 3 You eat healthy food.
a) shouldn't b) should c) mustn't d) have
- 4 You shouldn't to strangers.
a) talks b) talking c) talk d) talked
- 5 You must your teeth every day.
a) brushes b) brush c) to brush d) brushing
- 6 You touch a hot stove.
a) should b) must c) haven't d) mustn't
- 7 You drink plenty of water.
a) should b) shouldn't c) are d) can't
- 8 You shouldn't up too late.
a) stays b) stay c) stayed d) to stay
- 9 You must a seat belt in the car.
a) wore b) to wear c) wearing d) wear
- 10 You bully يتنمر others.
a) must b) mustn't c) should d) can

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 You should (shared) information with your friends.
- 2 You (should) waste energy resources.
- 3 You must (raised) your hand to speak.
- 4 You (must) cheat on a test.
- 5 You (shouldn't) help your parents at home.
- 6 You shouldn't (eating) too much candy.
- 7 You must (does) your homework.
- 8 You should (said) "please" and "thank you".
- 9 You must (kept) your room tidy.
- 10 You (should) watch too much TV.

Units 5 and 6



A) Revision on Vocabulary

Unit 5

travel plan	خطة سفر	pack	يُحزم	information desk	مكتب المعلومات
book	يُحجز	brochure	كتيب	souvenir	تذكّار
luggage	أمتعة / حقائب السفر	guided tour	جولة إرشادية	board	يزكّب (طائرة/قطار)
Grand Egyptian Museum	المتحف المصري الكبير	Solar Boat	مركب الشمس	modern (adj.)	حديث
Galala Plateau	هضبة الجلالة	national (adj.)	وطني	crowding	ازدحام
leading (adj.)	رائد	view	منظر	luxury	فخامة
cable car	التلفريك	education	تعليم	medicine	طب
engineering	هندسة	abroad	في الخارج	empty (adj.)	فارغ
businesses	أعمال	peaceful (adj.)	سلمى	government	حكومة
vision	رؤية	sustainable	مستدام	wisdom	حكمة
bundle	حزمة	strength	قوة	knowledge	معرفة
solar stations	محطات شمسية	pollution	تلوث	builders	بناة
major (adj.)	رئيسي	Upper Egypt	صعيد مصر	development	تنمية
panels	ألواح	training	تدريب	local communities	المجتمعات المحلية
valuable project	مشروع ذو قيمة	development	تنمية/ تطوير	lotus flower	زهرة اللوتس
handles	مقابض	ceremony	طقس/ احتفال	funeral	جنازة
rituals	طقوس	symbol	رمز	eternal life	الحياة الأبدية

Unit 6

passport	جواز سفر	exhibition	معرض	fly	يطير
drip	تنقط	overflow	تفيض (تزداد عن الحد)	puddle	بركة مياه
leak	تسريب	hallway	رواق (ممر داخل المبنى)	hose	خرطوم
tap	صنبور	pipe	ماسورة	drop	قطرة مياه
precious	قيم / ثمين	resources	موارد	snap (her fingers)	تفرقع أصابعها (علامة على إيجاد فكرة)
curious	فضولي	leaky	مسرّب للمياه	puddles	برك مياه
cheerful	مبهج	spread	ينشر (فكرة/ خبراً)	mini-challenge	تحديّ صغير

Practice



on Vocabulary Unit 5

Unit 5

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Benban project uses clean and energy.
a) cheap b) dirty c) sustainable d) ancient
- 2 Egypt is a sunny country and it's perfect for energy.
a) wave b) oil c) non-renewable d) solar
- 3 To is to come together.
a) argue b) save c) unite d) walk
- 4 A group of things that are tied together is called a
a) bundle b) wisdom c) strength d) farm
- 5 Al Galala has a great of the sea.
a) review b) shore c) view d) transport
- 6 Al Galala City was a part of a plan devised in 2015.
a) natural b) global c) national d) vision
- 7 Using knowledge to make good decisions is
a) community b) environment c) wisdom d) strength
- 8 Al Galala welcomes students from Egypt and abroad to study medicine.
a) Plateau b) Vision c) Project d) University
- 9 You need a/an to travel to another country.
a) exhibition b) passport c) souvenir d) brochure
- 10 They need to their suitcases for the vacation.
a) pack b) fly c) book d) travel

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

A)

crowding – leading – project – luxury

Al Galala City is a modern city in Egypt, built on Al Galala Plateau near Ain Sokhna. It was part of a national plan devised in 2015 to reduce (1)..... in older cities. Today, it is one of Egypt's (2)..... smart cities with clean air and sea views. The city has (3)..... hotels, beaches, a water park, and a famous cable car that offers great views from the mountain to the sea. Al Galala is also a center for education and science.

B)

sunlight – valuable – Cairo – improves

Egypt is a sunny country, making it ideal for solar energy. One major project is Benban Solar Park near Aswan. The project is important because it saves money by using (1)..... instead of expensive fuel, protects the environment, and brings jobs to Upper Egypt. Although some workers need training, it helps them learn new skills and (2)..... local communities Benban Solar Park is a smart and (3)..... project for Egypt.

Unit 5



B) Revision on Grammar

Unit 5

The Past Simple Tense

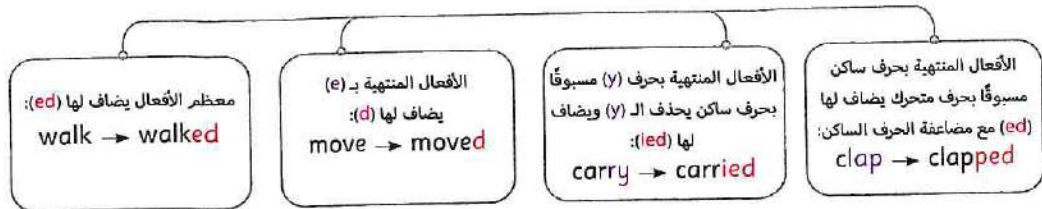
- We use the past simple to express actions that started and ended in the past.
نستخدم زمن الماضي البسيط للتعبير عن الأحداث التي بدأت وانتهت في الماضي.

Affirmative form:

صيغة الإثبات:

Subject (الفاعل) + ... التصريف الثاني للفعل

1. Regular Verbs أفعال منتظمة



e.g. - She **baked** a delicious cake yesterday. - They **played** outside after school every day.

2. Irregular Verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

أفعال تتغير في زمن الماضي البسيط (تحفظ) مثل:

Present	Past	Present	Past	Present	Past
go يذهب	went	find يجد	found	make يصنع	made
has/ have يمتلك	had	am/ is يكون (للمفرد)	was	are يكون (للمجمع)	were

Negative form:

صيغة النفي:

Subject (الفاعل) + didn't + (inf.) المصدر في المصدر

e.g. Noha **didn't clean** the house last night.

Yes/No question:

السؤال بـ (هل):

Question

السؤال

A: Did + subject + (inf.) المصدر في المصدر ...?

Answer

الإجابة

B: Yes,

B: No,

subject (الفاعل)

did.

didn't.

e.g. A: Did he **travel** last summer? B: Yes, he **did**. / No, he **didn't**.

Wh- question:

السؤال باستخدام كلمات الاستفهام:

Question

السؤال

A: Wh- word
كلمة الاستفهام

did subject

...? الفعل في المصدر (inf.)

Answer

الإجابة

B: Subject + التصريف الثاني للفعل .

e.g. - A: Where **did** he **go** yesterday?
B: He **went** to the movie theater.

- A: Who **did** they play with?
B: They **played** with their friends.

Verb to "be" in the past simple فعل "يكون" في زمن الماضي البسيط

Affirmative Form:

صيغة الإثبات:

I / He / She / It + **was**e.g. I **was** sad at the party.You / We / They + **were**e.g. We **were** excited at the zoo.

Negative Form:

صيغة النفي:

I / He / She / It + **wasn't**e.g. Ramy **wasn't** fine last week.You / We / They + **weren't**e.g. They **weren't** at the park.

Yes/No question:

السؤال بـ (هل):

Was + (I / he / she / it) ...?e.g. A: **Was** Maher at home?B: Yes, he **was**.

OR

B: No, he **wasn't**.**Were** + (we / you / they) ...?e.g. A: **Were** you at movie theater?B: Yes, I **was**.

OR

B: No, I **wasn't**.

Practice



on Grammar Unit 5

Unit 5

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Moaz to the party late last night.
a) arrives b) arrived c) is arriving d) arrive
- 2 They played a nice chess game
a) yesterday b) tomorrow c) now d) next month
- 3 Mom a super delicious cake two hours ago.
a) bakes b) is baking c) baked d) are bake
- 4 My dad the tickets yesterday.
a) didn't buy b) buys c) isn't buying d) can't buy
- 5 Did they in at a luxury hotel?
a) checked b) checks c) check d) to check
- 6 A: When he travel? B: Yesterday.
a) is b) does c) did d) do
- 7 A: Did she attend the meeting? B: Yes,
a) I did b) he does c) she did d) did she.
- 8 Manar home yesterday. I think she was at her friend's house.
a) isn't b) didn't c) wasn't d) aren't
- 9 Where you an hour ago?
a) are b) do c) is d) were
- 10 I the exhibition and it was amazing.
a) visited b) visit c) visiting d) visits

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 The brochure I bought was free it (not cost) me anything.
- 2 My sister (be/not) asleep when I came back home.
- 3 They didn't (had) the tickets, so they couldn't leave.
- 4 How many cards (does) you write yesterday?
- 5 The weather (is) nice and sunny yesterday.
- 6 Last night, they (watches) a family movie together.
- 7 Where (do) you get this dress?
- 8 Did you (saw) the whole episodes?
- 9 Ancient Egyptians (building) many ancient temples.
- 10 What (do) the teacher explain yesterday?

Unit 6

Story Corner

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Noor, Farida, and Ahmed are the main of the story.
 a) characters b) setting c) idea d) author
- 2 Which of the following does not waste water?
 a) Dripping taps b) Overflowing
 c) Leaks in pipes d) Short showers
- 3 Noor snapped her fingers because
 a) she had an idea b) she was angry
 c) she was late d) her hand hurt
- 4 Who said, "That's a wonderful idea—Go for it!"?
 a) Noor b) Ahmed c) The teacher d) Farida

2 Read and write T (True) or F (False):

- 1 "The Water Savers" shows us that small actions can make a difference. ()
- 2 The setting of the story is in Ancient Egypt. ()
- 3 The students didn't find problems with water in the school. ()
- 4 Small drips do not waste water. ()
- 5 All the students wanted to help Noor, Ahmed, and Farida. ()

3 Match the words in column (A) with their meanings in column (B).

A	B
1. dripping	a. things we use to live (e.g., water)
2. resources	b. having holes or cracks
3. leaky	c. flowing in small drops

4 Answer the following questions:

- 1 Why is saving water important?
.....
- 2 How can small actions make a big difference?
.....
- 3 Why is saving water important?
.....
- 4 Can one person really make a difference? Why/ Why not?
.....
- 5 What is the name of the story?
.....
- 6 How did the students feel at the end of the story?
.....
- 7 Who helped the students fix the leak?
.....
- 8 What did Ahmed use to take photos?
.....
- 9 Who made posters with messages?
.....
- 10 What are three things you can do at home to save water?
.....
- 11 What did the students use to find problems in school?
.....
- 12 Why did Noor, Ahmed, and Farida want to help?
.....
- 13 Where did the water overflow?
.....
- 14 What was the message on Farida's poster?
.....
- 15 Why did Mr. Youssef support the students?
.....



Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs الأفعال المنتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past	Present	Past
carve ينحت	carved	color يلون	colored	play يلعب	played
wrap يغلف/يلف	wrapped	dye يصبغ	dyed	end ينهى	ended
live يعيش	lived	hope يأمل	hoped	use يستخدم	used
paint يرسم / يلون	painted	want يريد	wanted	rest يستريح	rested
enjoy يستمتع بـ	enjoyed	start يبدأ	started	look like يشبه	looked like
love يحب	loved	salute يحيى	saluted	clean ينظف	cleaned
work يعمل	worked	chat يحدث	chatted	prepare يجهز	prepared
raise يرفع/يربي	raised	laugh يضحك	laughed	check يتفقد	checked
shape يشكل	shaped	stay يمتكث	stayed	move يتحرك	moved
protect يحمي	protected	walk يمشي	walked	water يسقي/يروي	watered
survive ينجو	survived	watch يشاهد	watched	visit يزور	visited
search يبحث	searched	last يبقى/يدوم	lasted	develop يطور	developed
organize ينظم	organized	need يحتاج	needed	help يساعد	helped
show يعرض	showed	pack يحزم	packed	greet يسلم على	greeted
pick up يلتقط	picked up	arrive يصل	arrived	explain يشرح	explained
stop يتوقف	stopped	travel يسافر	traveled	happen يحدث	happened
smell يشم	smelled	bike يركب الدراجة	biked	jump يقفز	jumped
refresh ينعش	refreshed	admire يعجب	admired	contain يحتوي	contained
study يدرس	studied	cause يسبب	caused	share يشارك	shared
fix يصلح	fixed	continue يستمر	continued	waste يضيع	wasted
treat يعالج	treated	answer يجيب	answered	detect يتحقق من	detected
save ينقذ	saved	earn يكسب	earned	exist يتواجد	existed
attract يجذب	attracted	charge يشحن	charged	pollute يلوث	polluted
book يحجز	booked	affect يؤثر على	affected	touch يلمس	touched
offer يعرض	offered	print يطبع	printed	bake يخبز	baked
argue يناقش	argued	board يركب (طائرة/قطار)	boarded	reduce يقلل	reduced
plan يخطط	planned	harm يؤذي	harmed		

Irregular verbs الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
hang	يعلق	hung	go	يذهب	went
drink	يشرب	drank	think	يفكر	thought
buy	يشترى	bought	wake up	يستيقظ	woke up
put	يضع	put	have	يملك	had
do	يفعل	did	begin	يبدأ	began
wear	يرتدى	wore	fly	يطير	flew
build	يبني	built	eat	ياكل	ate
speak	يتحدث	spoke	take	ياخذ	took
teach	يدرس	taught	keep	يقي/يحافظ على	kept
make	يصنع	made	rise	يرتفع	rose
tell	يخبر	told	catch	يمسك	caught
sit	يجلس	sat	come	يأت	came
become	يصبح	became	ride	يركب	rode
swim	يعوم	swam	find	يجد	found
leave	يغادر	left	light	يضئ	lit
run	يجري/يُدير	ran	hurt	يؤذي	hurt
throw	يرمي	threw	write	يكتب	wrote
speak	يتحدث	spoke	bring	يُحضّر	brought
sell	يبيع	sold	send	يُرسل	sent
stand	يقف/يقع في	stood	fight	يتشاجر/يحارب	fought
feed	يطعم	fed	break	يكسر	broke

Final Tests

Test 1

30



Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4

- 1 Salma visited last weekend.
a) Cairo b) Alexandria c) Aswan d) Luxor
- 2 Salma went to Luxor with her
a) family b) friends c) cousins d) teachers
- 3 Salma bought for her friends.
a) pottery b) jewelry c) souvenirs d) eggs
- 4 Salma ate delicious for lunch.
a) falafel b) pizza c) chicken d) sandwiches



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1.5

- 1 Our village has beautiful
a) landscapes b) noises c) machines d) tunnels
- 2 Natural helps the plants in our garden grow.
a) weed b) hibiscus c) fertilizer d) basil
- 3 Ancient Egyptians decorated their jewelry with
a) granite b) temples c) papyrus d) colorful stones

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

1.5

lights – gas – panels – wind

Egyptians can save energy in simple ways. First, turn off (1)..... in empty rooms. Second, use Egypt's sunshine with solar (2)..... . Third, make sure the fridge door is always closed. Fourth, cook with proper pot sizes. Fifth, walk or bike to nearby places. Solar and (3)..... energy are clean choices. Oil and gas cause pollution and climate change.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

7

Ras Mohamed is a famous national park in the south of Sinai. It is known for its beautiful coral reefs and clear water. Many tourists visit the park to snorkel and see colorful fish and sea creatures. The landscape is also special, with desert cliffs, mangrove trees, and quiet beaches. Ras Mohamed is not just for fun—it helps

protect many sea animals and plants. People learn a lot about nature when they visit. It is a perfect place for anyone who loves the sea, adventure, and the environment.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1** The main idea of the text is about
a) tourists b) Ras Mohamed
c) sea sports d) the environment
- 2** Ras Mohamed is in the of Sinai.
a) north b) south c) east d) west

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 Why do many tourists visit Ras Mohamed?
- 4 What do people learn about when they visit Ras Mohamed?
- 5 What is Ras Mohamed known for?



Writing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

- 1 riding – Ahmed – is – car – the cable – in Al Galala.
-
- 2 diving – Ali – Does – in – enjoy – sea – the?

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 Farmers in Beni Suef (grows) cotton and beans.
2 Visitors (mustn't) have passports to enter Egypt.

7 Punctuate the following:

- 1 Where is the high Dam
- 2 learn more about the world around you

8 Write a text of (50-60) words using the following guiding elements:

“Benban Solar Park”

Where is it? – Why is it an important project?

Story

Who are the three main characters in "The Water Savers"?

Test 2

30



Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4

- 1 Ali's grandpa grows in their garden.
a) hibiscus b) carrots c) potatoes d) wheat
- 2 The plants give them ingredients for
a) soup b) tea c) juice d) bread
- 3 Every morning, Ali helps pull out
a) flowers b) weeds c) rocks d) leaves
- 4 Trees in their garden provide cool
a) fruit b) shade c) wood d) bark



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1.5

- 1 Ancient Egyptians carved their statues from
a) sand b) clay c) granite d) mud
- 2 are machines for making cloth or carpets.
a) Looms b) Fishing nets c) Souvenirs d) Malls
- 3 My dad the weeds because they can harm the plants.
a) waters b) grows c) pulls out d) plants

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

1.5

coral – snorkel – fish – beach

Last summer, my family went to Ras Mohamed. We walked along the sandy (1)..... and took photos of the sea. My brother and I learned how to (2)..... in the shallow water. We saw colorful (3)..... swimming near the coral reefs. It was a fun and exciting trip that I will never forget!

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

7

Dr. Mostafa El-Sayed is one of Egypt's greatest scientists. He was born in 1933 and he studied at Ain Shams University. He became a world expert in chemistry and nanoscience. He created "El-Sayed's Rule" about how molecules work. His research on gold nanoparticles helps doctors find and treat cancer. For his amazing work, he won many awards, including the US National Medal of Science. Dr. El-Sayed shows how Egyptian scientists can change the world. He makes all Egyptians proud of their country's smart people.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1** The main idea of the text is about
 a) science b) Dr. Mostafa El-Sayed
 c) Egypt d) nanoparticles
- 2** Dr. Mostafa El-Sayed was born in
 a) 1933 b) 1946 c) 1950 d) 1990

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 Who is Dr. Mostafa El-Sayed?
- 4 What did he create?
- 5 What awards did he win?



Writing

S Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1

- 1 animals – small – The – ibis – eats – fish – like – insects – and.
2 workers – The – are – building – homes – in our – village.

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

△

- 1 Solar panels can't (worked) without sunlight.
2 You (shouldn't) turn off unused lights.

7 Punctuate the following:

4

- 1 I hope you re doing well
- 2 where does paper come from

8 Write a text of (50-60) words using the following guiding elements:

10

"The daily life in Beni Suef"

wake up early – make cement and clothes



The setting of "The Water Savers" is in

- a) Aswan b) Luxor c) Cairo d) Alexandria



Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4

- 1 Omar wants to be a
a) teacher b) paramedic c) farmer d) chef
- 2 Fatima studies to design
a) cars b) clothes c) buildings d) food
- 3 Ali fixes as a mechanic.
a) computers b) houses c) vehicles d) roads
- 4 Uncle Sami controls the streets as a
a) doctor b) tailor c) builder d) traffic officer



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1.5

- 1 We need to light our houses and watch TV.
a) wisdom b) materials c) energy d) climate
- 2 Trees give us.....
a) shade b) rain c) snow d) sand
- 3 To is to go somewhere with another person.
a) accompany b) play c) eat d) run

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

1.5

kingfishers – desert – tilapia – flows

The Nile is the longest river in the world. It (1)..... through Egypt from south to north. Many animals live in and near the Nile. In the water, people can find fish like (2)..... . Some birds, like (3)..... catch fish to eat. The Nile is very important for people, animals, and plants in Egypt.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

7

Mahmoud is a farmer from a village near Aswan who is now working at Benban Solar Park. In 2018, he helped build the solar park. His daughter Nour studies engineering. The park powers her college in Aswan. Mahmoud's wife, Amina, works in the park's cafeteria. Their family earns more money now. Benban's clean energy helps hospitals and schools. It reduced pollution in their area. Mahmoud is proud that Egypt built this big solar project. It gives jobs and teaches new skills to villagers like him.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The main idea of the text is about
a) Benban Solar Park b) villages in Aswan
d) hospitals and schools d) the cafeteria
- 2 Amina works in the park's
a) hospital b) cafeteria c) farm d) area

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 Where is Mahmoud from?
- 4 What does Nour study?
- 5 How does Benban project help the villagers?



Writing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1

- 1 don't – Solar – at – work – panels – night.

- 2 should – We – help – electricity – save.

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

4

- 1 My friends aren't (visited) the museum now.
- 2 Sea turtles are able to (swimming) fast.

7 Punctuate the following:

4

- 1 can wasting energy cause climate change
- 2 I m doing research about man-made resources

8 Write a text of (50-60) words using the following guiding elements:

7

“The High Dam”

What is the High Dam? – Why did Egyptians build it?

Story

Water can be saved by fixing

- a) light bulbs b) broken pipes c) leaky taps d) both b and c



Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4

- 1 Ancient Egyptians built statues with and bricks.
a) wood b) granite c) clay d) sand
- 2 They made jewelry from gold and
a) paper b) colored stones c) glass d) shells
- 3 Ancient Egyptians wrote on
a) metal b) papyrus c) leather d) stone
- 4 They wrapped mummies in
a) cotton b) silk c) linen d) wool



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1.5

- 1 I really like to music. It is my favorite hobby.
a) talk b) play c) buy d) visit
- 2 Near the river, we saw searching for food using their beaks.
a) caracals b) sea lions c) ibises d) sea turtles
- 3 Oil and gas can the environment.
a) help b) save c) harm d) protect

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

1.5

cable – reduce – luxury – beach

Nour and her classmates visited Al Galala City on a school trip. They rode the famous (1)..... car from mountain to sea. Their teacher explained how this smart city helps (2)..... crowding. Nour's uncle works at Galala University, teaching engineering. The city has (3)..... hotels and clean beaches. Nour's family wants to move there too. The government is making more transport links.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

7

In Egypt, the weather changes in each city. Today, Alexandria is cloudy with rain. The sea has big waves and people stay indoors. Cairo is sunny with a nice breeze. So, families enjoy the parks and children play outside. Aswan is extremely hot and dry. People drink water and rest in the shade. Farmers wake up early to water their plants before sunrise. My uncle says this weather is normal for Egypt during this season. The different weather makes each city special. Some people like rain, others prefer sunshine. Everyone adapts to their local weather in different ways.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The main idea of the text is about the
a) the weather in Egypt b) farmers
c) seasons d) the weather in Cairo
- 2 is extremely hot and dry.
a) Aswan b) Alexandria c) Cairo d) Egypt

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 How is the weather in Alexandria?
- 4 Why do families enjoy parks in Cairo?
- 5 When do farmers water their plants in Aswan?



Writing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1

- 1 learn – We – about – at school – can – Egypt – Ancient.
.....

- 2 are – What – they – buying – at the – moment?
.....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

4

- 1 Engineers (be) able to fix the solar panels.
2 How many trees (do) your park have?

7 Punctuate the following:

4

- 1 What s the weather like in your city
.....
- 2 Ancient egyptians used linen to wrap mummies
.....

8 Write a text of (50-60) words using the following guiding elements:

7

“Food waste in Egypt”

leftover food – food banks
.....
.....

Story

Where does the story of “The Water Savers” take place?
.....



Listening

4

- 1** Tutankhamun's mask is displayed in the
a) Cairo Tower b) Grand Egyptian Museum
c) Nile River d) Alexandria Library
- 2** Visitors can get help at the museum's
a) gift shop b) information desk c) cafeteria d) playground
- 3** People need to travel to Egypt.
a) tickets b) passports c) invitations d) permits
- 4** explain the museum exhibits to visitors.
a) Guides b) Brochures c) Teachers d) Videos



Reading

1.5

- 1 Similar poles in magnets
a) attract b) pull together c) repel d) come across
- 2 The streets are It's raining heavily.
a) hot b) dusty c) busy d) wet
- 3 and sunglasses help protect us from the sun.
a) Rackets b) Shoes c) Jeans d) Hats

1.5

rose – cactus – water – dry

Once upon a time, there was a desert. It was a (1)..... desert. There was a (2)..... with red petals that lived there. She was very proud and often made fun of the rough (3)..... covered in sharp thorns.

7

The High Dam is a huge wall that crosses the Nile River in Aswan, Egypt. It holds a large lake called Lake Nasser. The dam stops the river from flooding and keeps water for people to use during the year. Why did Egyptians build it? They built the High Dam to solve problems with flooding and drought. They also wanted to give people clean electricity and help farmers grow more crops with regular water.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The main idea of the text is about the.....
a) River Nile b) Red Sea c) High Dam d) Pyramids
- 2 means no water for a long time.
a) Drought b) Draught c) Flood d) Raining

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 Why did Egyptians build the High Dam?.....
- 4 What does the High Dam give us?.....
- 5 What is the name of the lake behind the High Dam?.....



Writing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1

- 1 does – When – museum – the – receive – visitors?
.....

- 2 mustn't – talk – The – students – during – the test.
.....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

4

- 1 Where are they (go)?
- 2 Who can (helps) me bake the birthday cake?

7 Punctuate the following:

4

- 1 does your grandpa like mint tea
.....
- 2 ali always helps his friends at school
.....

8 Write a text of (50-60) words using the following guiding elements:

7

“Man-made resources”

What are man-made resources? – What are some of them made from?

.....
.....

Story

What does Noor do when an unkind classmate tells her, “Why do you care about water so much?”



Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4

- 1 In Amina's village, people work as
 a) fishermen b) farmers c) weavers d) builders
- 2 Omar's village uses for fishing.
 a) cars b) nets c) pens d) bottles
- 3 Salma's village grows
 a) fish b) crops c) wool d) stones
- 4 Hassan's family works with
 a) clay b) wood c) wool d) metal



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1.5

- 1 is made from sand and used in windows and mirrors.
 a) Clay b) Gold c) Paper d) Glass
- 2 Don't water when you brush your teeth.
 a) use b) harm c) waste d) close
- 3 Gases from cars and buses can the air.
 a) pollute b) clean c) charge d) protect

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

1.5

happy – eternal – handles – Egyptian

The Lotus Chalice is made of white alabaster. It has a lotus flower shape with two (1)..... . Workers found it in King Tut's tomb. Now, it sits in the Grand (2)..... Museum. It was used in funeral ceremonies. Ancient Egyptians thought it brought (3)..... life. They believed it helped Tutankhamun live forever after death.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

7

Amira watches workers every day. Her father is a traffic officer who controls vehicles. Her mother is a water engineer who researches solutions. Uncle Khalid, the brave paramedic, helps in emergencies. Aunt Hana works as an architect designing houses. The delivery person, Mr. Hassan, brings food to their community. At the garage, Jamal, the mechanic, fixes cars. Ismail, the tailor, makes school uniforms.

The street cleaner keeps their neighborhood tidy. These jobs all help people live better. In the future, new jobs will come, but communities will always need helpful workers.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The main idea in the text is about ".....".
a) different jobs b) community c) Amira and her friends d) traffic officers
- 2 watches workers every day.
a) Amira's father b) Uncle Khalid c) Mr. Hassan d) Amira

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 What does Amira's father do?
- 4 Who helps in emergencies?
- 5 What does Mr. Hassan deliver?



Writing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1

1 is - What - mom - cooking - for - today - lunch?

2 shouldn't - Visitors - touch - ancient - the - statue.

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

4

1 Mona (can't) speak English well. She's fluent.

2 What (do) your father do for work?

7 Punctuate the following:

4

1 how are you

2 Dr. mostafa El-Sayed is a brilliant egyptian scientist.

8 Write a text of (50-60) words using the following guiding elements:

7

"My trip to Wadi El Rayan"
organized a trip - packed my bag

Story

What did Mr. Youssef, the cleaner, tell the students about small drips of water?



Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4

- 1 The rose laughed at the cactus's
a) flowers b) thorns c) roots d) leaves
- 2 When hot weather came, the rose
a) dried up b) grew taller c) changed color d) got stronger
- 3 The bird drank water from the
a) rose b) cactus c) pond d) cloud
- 4 The rose learned that matters most.
a) beauty b) color c) size d) kindness



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1.5

- 1 Bricks are made by mixing and water.
a) granite b) plastic c) paper d) clay
- 2 I'd like to a hotel room, please.
a) book b) back c) sleep d) feed
- 3 The person who shows us around the museum is called a
a) napkin b) manager c) guide d) cousin

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

1.5

cooking – shade – man-made – weeds

Plants are important for life. They give us food and clean air. Herbs like basil and mint are used in (1)..... and making tea. Trees provide cool (2)..... and homes for animals. Farmers grow fruits and vegetables to eat. We must care for plants by watering them and removing (3).....

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

7

Mr. Ali and his family took a vacation to Al Galala City last summer. Mr. Ali admired the smart city planning. His wife Samira enjoyed the peaceful beaches. Their son Karim loved the water park. Their daughter Layal wants to study medicine at Galala University. They rode the cable car daily, seeing amazing views. Before 2015, this plateau was empty. Now it's a modern city with jobs and schools. The government is building more parks and homes. The family plans to move there next year.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The main idea of the text is about
a) Al Galala City b) Galala University c) water park d) the government
- Layal wants to study at Galala University.
a) art b) engineering c) education d) medicine

B Answer the following questions:

- What did Mr. Ali admire?
- Who loved the water park?
- How was the city before 2015?



Writing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1

- plants – Cactus – much – to grow – don't – need – water.

- you – Are – able – to – fix – this – machine?

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

4

- We (enjoyed) the view of the luxury hotel right now.
- Drivers (mustn't) stop at red lights.

7 Punctuate the following:

4

- Is arabic your favorite subject
.....
- nadia and Omar are my best friends
.....

8 Write a text of (50-60) words using the following guiding elements:

7

"Using energy in Egypt"

What kinds of energy do we use in Egypt? – What kinds of energy do we use in Egypt?

.....

Story

Would you like to join the "Water Savers"? Why?

.....



Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4

- 1 Ahmed's father works at a
a) school b) hotel c) hospital d) farm
- 2 Ahmed's sister studies at
a) Cairo University b) Al Galala University
c) Alexandria University d) Aswan University
- 3 Every weekend, Ahmed rides the
a) bus b) cable car c) train d) boat
- 4 The government is building more
a) factories b) offices c) homes d) stores



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1.5

- 1 Plastic is made from and used for bottles.
a) trees b) rocks c) oil d) soil
- 2 We saw a special at the museum.
a) street b) exhibition c) playground d) hospital
- 3 Camels were walking on the dunes.
a) farm b) sand c) forest d) green

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

1.5

bright – researches – paramedic – street

In our town, Ahmed drives a delivery truck. He brings packages to people. His friend Bakri is a (1)..... cleaner. He keeps roads clean. Yousef works as a (2)..... . He helps in emergencies. Water resources engineer, Nour plans water systems. She (3)..... solutions. All these workers help our community.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

7

Ancient Egyptians were clever with materials. They used granite to build temples that still stand. Soft clay made useful pots. Precious gold and bright stones decorated amulets. They used papyrus for writing. Strong linen wrapped mummies to survive thousands of years. They decorated everything beautifully. Today, we find these

objects in museums. Modern builders still use their ideas. The materials tell us about Egyptian life. Their skills with stone, metal, and plants were amazing. Egypt's ancient objects teach us about the past.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The word "Precious" means
 a) cheap b) dark c) bright d) expensive
- 2 They used for writing.
 a) clay b) gold c) papyrus d) granite

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 How did Ancient Egyptians make pots?
- 4 Why did Ancient Egyptians wrap mummies in linen?
- 5 Summarize the text in two sentences.



Writing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1

- 1 able – Scientists – are – to examine – objects – ancient.
- 2 touch – You – sharp – mustn't – thorns – the.

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

4

- 1 You (can) drive without a license.
- 2 When are they (arrives)?

7 Punctuate the following:

4

- 1 How do people start their day in damietta
- 2 Last tuesday, we organized a trip to alexandria.

8 Write a text of (50-60) words using the following guiding elements:

7

“A trip to Ras Mohamed”

What is Ras Mohamed? – What did you do there?

Story

What did Noor, Ahmed, and Farida discover about water in their school?

- a) leaky taps b) students left water running
- c) hoses were left on for too long d) all of the above



Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4

- 1 Layla checks the while eating breakfast.
a) news b) weather app c) messages d) calendar
- 2 In Alexandria, Samir texts about beaches.
a) sunny b) rainy c) windy d) snowy
- 3 Layla's brother plays football in weather.
a) cloudy b) rainy c) sunny d) cold
- 4 In Aswan, it's very
a) hot b) cloudy c) rainy d) windy



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1.5

- 1 They the plane two hours ago.
a) packed b) made c) arrived d) boarded
- 2 To is to color cloth or wool using a special liquid.
a) fish b) dye c) weave d) fix
- 3 The place where a story takes place is the
a) beginning b) characters c) setting d) middle

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

1.5

discoveries – nanoscience – National – energy

Dr. Mostafa El-Sayed is a brilliant Egyptian scientist. He studied in Cairo and America. He became famous in chemistry and (1)..... . Nanoscience studies very small things. He made important (2)..... about gold nanoparticles. These help doctors treat cancer. He won the US (3)..... Medal of Science. His work makes Egypt proud. He is a true science hero.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

7

Last Friday, Hani and his family visited Wadi El Rayan. They saw tall sand dunes and rode camels across the soft sand. Then, they went to the fossil museum, where they saw the skeleton of a giant whale. Hani was surprised to learn that this desert was once under the sea! After that, they had lunch near the waterfall and took photos. Hani said it was one of the best trips of his life because he saw something new and exciting in nature.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The main idea of the text is about
a) Hani b) Ras Mohamed c) Wadi El Rayan d) Nature
- 2 Hani saw a of a giant whale.
a) giant egg b) skeleton c) head d) tail

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 Why did Hani say it was one of the best trips of his life?
.....
- 4 What did they do near the waterfall?
.....
- 5 When did Hani visit Wadi El Rayan?
.....



Writing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1

- 1 does – What – the – information – desk – provide?
.....
- 2 follow – You – must – signs – road – the.
.....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

4

- 1 Ammar and Ghada are (worked) on a school project right now.
- 2 You (should) judge others by their looks.

7 Punctuate the following:

4

- 1 Is Al galala near the Nile?
.....
- 2 Egypt has different environments
.....

8 Write a text of (50-60) words using the following guiding elements:

7

“Daily school life in Egypt”

When does your school day start? – What’s your favorite subject?
.....
.....

Story

If you “snap your fingers” about something, you probably have a/an
a) test b) idea c) disease d) match



Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4

- 1 School begins at
a) 7:00 b) 7:15 c) 7:30 d) 8:00
- 2 Students start the day by saluting the
a) teacher b) principal c) flag d) classroom
- 3 The first subject is usually
a) math b) science c) Arabic d) English
- 4 Students sometimes work in groups or
a) teams b) pairs c) rows d) circles



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1.5

- 1 Did you your suitcases for the trip, Lara?
a) pack b) book c) make d) visit
- 2 Fishermen catch fish using fishing
a) looms b) wool c) nets d) turbans
- 3 The lesson we learn from a story is called a
a) moral b) character c) setting d) beginning

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

1.5

crops – fishing – weave – keep

People live in different villages. In Amina's village, they catch fish. Omar's village uses nets for (1)..... Salma's village grows and harvests (2)..... Hassan's family spins wool on looms. Each village has special work. Some dye cloth, others (3)..... carpets. Life is quiet, but full of work. Villages are important places with kind people. All people who live in different villages around Egypt are proud of their traditions and customs.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

7

We should save energy by turning off lights and devices when they're not in use. We should close the fridge door quickly and use the right size pot for cooking. Cars and buses use fuel which pollutes the air. Walking or biking short distances also saves energy and keeps us healthy. Wasting energy causes climate change, which affects animals and their homes. Small daily actions can make a big difference. Together, we can protect our country and planet. We should all be Energy Heroes.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The main idea of the text is about ".....".
a) Helping the environment b) Animals
c) Doing a sport d) Flying kites
- 2 Save means
a) keep b) waste c) harm d) spend

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 How can we help the environment?
.....
- 4 What does climate change do to animals?
.....
- 5 What can small daily actions do?
.....



Writing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1

- 1 waste – They – shouldn't – food – at – lunchtime.
.....
- 2 is writing – The – teacher – the lesson – on the – board.
.....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

4

- 1 What (does) plants need to grow?
.....
- 2 My brother can't (drawing). He needs practice.
.....

7 Punctuate the following:

4

- 1 how do you help at home
.....
- 2 the temperature is rising quickly in aswan.
.....

8 Write a text of (50-60) words using the following guiding elements:

7

"Al Galala City"
luxury hotels – Galala University
.....
.....

Story

Why did the children have "mini-competitions" at school?
.....

Test 11

30



Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4

- 1 We can save electricity at home by
a) using fans b) leaving lights on c) turning off lights d) heating water
- 2 Close fridge doors
a) slowly b) often c) quickly d) rarely
- 3 Use for clean energy in Egypt.
a) gas b) coal c) solar power d) oil
- 4 For short trips, we should
a) drive b) fly c) walk or bike d) take a train



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1.5

- 1 We the crops when the fruits are ready.
a) spin b) dye c) harvest d) make
- 2 We would like to two rooms, please.
a) board b) fly c) book d) visit
- 3 The people or animals in the story are the
a) end b) moral c) setting d) characters

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

1.5

instead – children – posters – dangerous

Our school has a traffic problem. Cars are noisy and fast. This scares (1).....
We have ideas to help. First, we will make big (2)..... The posters say,
"Drive Slowly Near School!" Second, we will ride bikes (3)..... of
using cars. Third, we will tell drivers to be careful. Our teacher supports us. The
whole class is working together. When the community helps, changes happen.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

7

Egypt's famous Grand Egyptian Museum displays Tutankhamun's mask and ancient artifacts. Tourists fly to Egypt to explore history. **They** book hotel rooms and pack suitcases. At the museum, exhibitions show mummies and pharaohs' treasures. Visitors get information at the desk and join guided tours. Brochures explain the collections. The museum took 20 years to build. People buy souvenirs

like small pyramids. A travel plan helps organize the trip. Passports are needed for international travel. The museum's Solar Boat is a special attraction.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The museum displays artifacts.
a) modern b) new c) updated d) ancient
- 2 The pronoun "They" refers to
a) ancient artifacts b) tourists
c) hotel rooms d) museums

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 Why do tourists fly to Egypt?
- 4 How many years did it take to build the museum?
- 5 Summarize the text in two sentences.



Writing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1

- 1 a safe – Animals – need – to – survive – habitat.
- 2 aren't – The – guests – going – to the – today – beach.

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

4

- 1 My brother is able to (making) fishing nets.
- 2 You (mustn't) save energy sources at home.

7 Punctuate the following:

4

- 1 Where is benban Solar Park
- 2 In cairo, the sun is shining

8 Write a text of (50-60) words using the following guiding elements:

7

"The weather in my city"

Where do you live? What's the weather like in your city?

.....

.....

Story

"They didn't let the teasing stop them" means,

- a) They stopped what they were doing b) They didn't give up
- c) They stopped teasing others d) They started teasing others



Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4

- 1 Maged is tennis at the club now.
a) playing b) watching c) teaching d) learning
- 2 The boys are practicing
a) basketball b) football c) volleyball d) swimming
- 3 Nada is wearing her new today.
a) shoes b) dress c) jacket d) uniform
- 4 The cat is on the couch right now.
a) playing b) eating c) sleeping d) jumping



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1.5

- 1 The helps keep our streets clean.
a) paramedic b) architect c) traffic officer d) street cleaner
- 2 We bought the small statue as a/an
a) ticket b) exhibition c) passport d) souvenir
- 3 We spin the wool on the to weave the carpet.
a) net b) loom c) boat d) rope

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

1.5

trips – treasures – brochure – information

The Grand Egyptian Museum displays Tutankhamun's golden mask. Visitors come to see pharaohs' (1)..... and mummies. The museum took many years to build. At the (2)..... desk, staff help guests. Tourists often book guided tours. They read (3)..... about exhibits. Before traveling, people pack suitcases and board planes. The travel plan shows tour times.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

7

Each village has its own special work. In fishing villages like Nada's people catch fish every day. Adel's village makes and repairs fishing nets by hand. Farming villages like Hana's grow wheat, cotton, and vegetables for harvest. Hassan's family raises sheep and spins their wool for weaving. Some villagers create colorful dyed fabrics or handmade carpets. Life changes with the seasons and traditions. Children learn skills from their families. Though the work is hard, village life stays peaceful and close to nature, keeping customs and traditions alive for the future.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The main idea of the text is about
a) villages around Egypt b) seasons c) handmade carpets d) fishing
- 2 Some villagers create colorful fabrics or handmade
a) clothes b) pots c) carpets d) glass

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 What do people in Nada's village do?
- 4 Whose village raises sheep?
- 5 What do children learn?



Writing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1

- 1 are – Children – playing – outside – safely.
- 2 must – Tourists – follow – guide's – the – instructions.

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

4

- 1 Where is Habiba (spent) her vacation this year?
- 2 Should we (protecting) wildlife?

7 Punctuate the following:

4

- 1 Does she study at galala University
- 2 The wind is blowing in alexandria

8 Write a text of (50-60) words using the following guiding elements:

7

"Different jobs"

brings food and packages – helps people cross roads

Story

When a classmate teased Noor, she replied by looking him in the eye. This means she was

- a) brave b) shy c) scared d) ugly



Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4

- 1 In Beni Suef, people start their day by
a) exercising b) shopping c) cleaning houses d) farming
- 2 Farmers grow crops like and beans.
a) wheat b) cotton c) rice d) oranges
- 3 Local factories produce and clothing items.
a) cement b) cars c) furniture d) computers
- 4 Families eat lunch together with rice,, and vegetables.
a) meat b) bread c) pasta d) soup



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1.5

- 1 We got all the information we needed at the
a) passport b) ticket
c) information desk d) souvenir
- 2 We start our school day by saluting the
a) flag b) background c) schoolbag d) books
- 3 The helps people in emergencies.
a) engineer b) tailor
c) mechanic d) paramedic

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

1.5

ceremonies – Museum – lotus – symbol

This chalice is made of alabaster. It looks like a white (1)..... flower with two handles. It was found in King Tutankhamun's tomb. Now, it is in the Grand Egyptian (2)..... . It was used in special (3)..... like funeral rituals.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

7

In the desert, a proud rose bloomed. She laughed at her neighbor, a cactus who has **thorns**. "You're ugly," she said. But when it was too hot, the rose began to die. She watched a bird peck the cactus and drink water from it. The rose asked for help. The kind cactus shared his water, saving her life. The rose learned an important lesson: Never judge by appearances. True worth comes from what's inside. From that day on, the rose and cactus became best friends in the hot desert.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The word "thorns" means points that grow on the stem or the branch.
a) soft b) bright c) sharp d) sweet
- The cactus shared its to help the rose.
a) water b) petals c) thorns d) roots

B Answer the following questions:

- Where do the rose and the cactus live?
- What happened when it was too hot?
- What is the moral of the story?



Writing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

- are - How - the - students - to Aswan - this - year - traveling?
.....
- recycle - The - government - should - plastic - bottles.
.....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- My grandma (don't) know how to use the internet.
- The bird is able to (flying) for long distances.

7 Punctuate the following:

- Why do tourists visit egypt
.....
- at noon, we eat lunch together
.....

8 Write an informal email of (50-60) words to your friend Nour to describe your day at school. Your name is Eslam and your email address is eslam@gmail.com. Your friend's email is nour@gamil.com.

To	:	.....
From	:	.....
Subject	:	.....
..... 		

Story

"I'd love your help", said the

- a) cleaner b) teacher c) student d) tailor



Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4

- 1 Omar is researching about resources.
a) natural b) man-made c) renewable d) ancient
- 2 Omar printed to help explain his project.
a) maps b) charts c) pictures d) documents
- 3 Plastic is made from
a) wood b) oil c) water d) metal
- 4 Glass is made from
a) sand b) rocks c) clay d) soil



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1.5

- 1 They showed the mummy in the museum's
a) information desk b) exhibition
c) ticket d) travel plan
- 2 The rose has red
a) thorns b) birds c) cover d) petals
- 3 My mom helps me my schoolbag.
a) pack b) salute c) play d) chat

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

1.5

dry – wind – weather – outside

My friend Youssef sent me a letter about Egypt's weather. Alexandria has rain and strong (1)..... . Cairo is sunny and warm. People sit in parks there. Aswan is very hot and (2)..... . Farmers work before sunrise. The (3)..... is different in every city. People in some places need umbrellas, and others need hats. I like sunny days best. My father likes cold weather best.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

7

Last weekend, Omar and his friend were at the new science museum. They went by bus. It took ninety minutes to reach the museum. They had their breakfast on the bus. They watched a show about space. Omar didn't understand some parts of it. His friend explained everything to him. Omar had a modern camera. They took photos of the rockets and stars. At the end, the guide asked if he enjoyed the show. Omar was amazed.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The main idea of the text is about a to the science museum.
a) trip b) class c) sport d) movie
- 2 They saw a about space.
a) play b) match c) picture d) show

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 How did Omar and his friends go to the museum?
.....
- 4 How long did it take to reach the museum?
.....
- 5 What did they see at the museum?
.....



Writing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1

1 is – able to – Omar – finish – the – today – project.
.....

2 does – When – your – day – school – start?
.....

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

4

1 Kids (can) drive cars.

2 The mechanic is (fixed) my dad's car in the garage.

7 Punctuate the following:

4

1 do you have a ticket to the exhibition
.....

2 We speak arabic in egypt.
.....

8 Write a text of (50-60) words using the following guiding elements:

7

“Dr. Mostafa El-Sayed”

brilliant Egyptian scientist – chemistry and nanoscience
.....
.....

Story

“Luxor is dry most of the year,” said Ahmed. Why do you think Luxor is dry most of the year?
.....



Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4

- 1 The cactus grows in the
a) forest b) desert c) garden d) mountain
- 2 The cactus has sharp to protect itself.
a) leaves b) petals c) thorns d) roots
- 3 The thorns feel to touch.
a) soft b) pleasant c) unpleasant d) smooth
- 4 Cactus doesn't have any
a) stems b) thorns c) petals d) branches



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1.5

- 1 I with my friends in the playground.
a) hang out b) take out c) get dressed d) go home
- 2 When something makes us feel uncomfortable, it's
a) good b) sweet c) pleasant d) unpleasant
- 3 You need a/an to visit another country.
a) passport b) guided tour c) exhibition d) souvenir

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

1.5

panels – granite – jewelry – materials

Egyptians used smart materials long ago. They cut (1)..... for big statues. They shaped clay into pots. Gold and stones became (2)..... Papyrus was their paper. They wrapped mummies in linen. These (3)..... lasted through time. Their temples show beautiful decorations. The materials helped their art survive. Modern people learn from ancient ways.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

7

Plants help people and nature in many ways. They give us food like fruits, vegetables, and herbs such as basil and mint. Trees clean the air and provide shade. Farmers use plants like olives to make oil. Plants like hibiscus can be used for tea. We must take care of plants by watering them and pulling out weeds. Gardens need natural fertilizer to grow well. Plants also prevent soil from washing

away. They make our world colorful and healthy. Without plants, life would be very different. We should protect all plants.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Basil and mint are
a) grains b) fruits c) vegetables d) herbs
- 2 The pronoun "They" refers to
a) fertilizers b) plants c) people d) farmers

B Answer the following questions:

- 3 How do plants help us?
- 4 How can we take care of plants?
- 5 Summarize the text in two sentences.



Writing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1

- 1 does - When - your - father - home - come?

- 2 can - Some - plants - store - water - inside.

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

4

- 1 My sister is (studies) arts at Cairo University.
- 2 Families should (ate) meals together.

7 Punctuate the following:

4

- 1 did Ancient Egyptians use gold
- 2 nubia is in the south of egypt.

8 Write a text of (50-60) words using the following guiding elements:

7

"Lotus Chalice"

made of alabaster - eternal life and beauty

Story

Who is your favorite character in "The Water Savers"? Why?

Al-Azhar Tests



Test 1

60



Language Functions

1 Read and complete the dialogue:

10

you – poster – hang – Near – walk

A: What are (1)..... doing, Nader?

B: I am making a poster to (2)..... around the park.

A: What does the (3)..... say?

B: It says "Drive Slowly (4)..... Schools".

A: That's helpful. We should (5)..... or bike near schools.



Vocabulary and Structures

2 Read and circle the odd one out and replace it with the correct word:

10

- | | |
|---|---------|
| 1 waves – tasty – wind – rain | (.....) |
| 2 Arabic – math – playground – English | (.....) |
| 3 thorns – petals – stem – bird | (.....) |
| 4 decorated – survived – ibis – wrapped | (.....) |
| 5 weak – embarrassed – describe – dry | (.....) |

3 Choose the correct answer:

10

- 1 Ancient Egyptians wrapped mummies in (gold – papyrus – temples – linen).
- 2 The plane (booking – packing – flying – fixing) to Paris is leaving now.
- 3 (Water – Weeds – Sunshine – Basil) are harmful to the plants.
- 4 The traffic officer helps people (make – cross – clean – eat) the road.
- 5 The (street cleaner – paramedic – mechanic – traffic officer) helps in emergencies.
- 6 I (don't – doesn't – isn't – am not) go to school on Fridays.
- 7 She (is drawing – are drawing – am drawing – drawing) a new picture now.
- 8 You (must – mustn't – shouldn't – have) do your homework early.
- 9 My children (am – is – are – be) able to clean their room by themselves.
- 10 Nada (can – do – can't – is) carry heavy bags. She needs help.



Reading Comprehension

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

10

Dr. Mostafa El-Sayed is a brilliant Egyptian scientist. He was born in Egypt in 1933. He studied at Ain Shams University in Cairo. He went to the USA to continue his scientific research. Nanoscience is the study of very tiny things – much smaller than a human hair. He discovered “gold nanoparticles”. They can be used to help doctors detect and treat some types of cancer.

A Answer the following questions:

- 1 What did Dr. Mostafa El-Sayed discover?
- 2 What can doctors use gold particles in?
- 3 Where did Dr. Mostafa El-Sayed study?

B Choose the correct answer:

- 4 Dr. Mostafa El-Sayed is a brilliant Egyptian (~~scientist~~ – ~~player~~ – ~~paramedic~~ – ~~mechanic~~).
- 5 Nanoscience is the study of very (~~big~~ – ~~huge~~ – ~~wide~~ – ~~small~~) things.



Writing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

10

- 1 should – We – keep – the – clean – environment.
- 2 dad – My – drives – me – to school – 7:30 – at.
- 3 wind – The – in – blowing – is – Alexandria.
- 4 colorful – stones – They – used – to make – jewelry.
- 5 always – We – school – to – go – early.

6 Write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences using the following guiding elements:

10

“Al Galala City”

modern – Plateau – reduce – luxury – cable

A E Language Functions

1 Read and complete the dialogue:

10

Cairo – dry – shining – weather – cloudy

A: How is the (1)..... in Alexandria, Hassan?

B: It's (2)..... and rainy.

A: What about (3).....?

B: The sun is (4)..... . People enjoy their time in parks.

A: My grandma lives in Aswan. It's too hot and (5)..... there.



Vocabulary and Structures

2 Read and circle the odd one out and replace it with the correct word:

10

- 1 basil – mint – fertilizer – herbs (.....)
- 2 important – brave – great – community (.....)
- 3 dancing – singing – music – traveling (.....)
- 4 granite – help – clay – gold (.....)
- 5 chemistry – nanoscience – vehicle – scientist (.....)

3 Choose the correct answer:

10

- 1 We saw huge ancient statues in the (temple – station – airport – river).
- 2 For more information, go to the (museum – exhibition – information desk – plane).
- 3 Mom uses (fruits – vegetables – weeds – herbs) like mint to make tea.
- 4 The (mechanic – tailor – doctor – nurse) fixed my old car.
- 5 The (mechanic – tailor – architect – delivery person) makes nice dresses.
- 6 He (watches – watched – watching – watch) cartoons every day.
- 7 What are you (did – doing – do – does) at the moment?
- 8 You (can't – are – mustn't – must) eat healthy food to be healthy.
- 9 The mechanic is able (to fix – fixes – fix – fixed) the car.
- 10 They can't (goes – go – went – going) outside. It's raining.



4 Read the text and answer the questions:

10

The High Dam is a huge wall that crosses the Nile River in Aswan, Egypt. It holds a large lake called Lake Nasser. The dam stops the river from flooding and keeps water for people to use during the year. Egyptians built the High Dam to solve problems with flooding and drought. They built it in Aswan between 1960 and 1970. It was officially completed and opened in 1970.

A Answer the following questions:

- 1 Where is the High Dam?
- 2 What does the High Dam do?
- 3 Why did the Egyptians build it?

B Choose the correct answer:

- 4 The High Dam holds the huge Nasser (Sea – Lake – River – Building).
- 5 The Dam was officially finished in (1960 – 1970 – 1985 – 1990).



Writing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

10

- 1 to – you – Are – able – swim – sea – the – in?
.....
- 2 should – We – support – banks – food.
.....
- 3 are – Children – playing – in the – in – Cairo – park.
.....
- 4 have – They – a short – at – break – 10:15.
.....
- 5 lunch, – washes – the – After – Mom – dishes.
.....

6 Write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences using the following guiding elements:

10

“Important jobs in my community”

paramedic – cleaner – traffic officer – delivery – architect



Language Functions

1 Read and complete the dialogue:

10

spend – grandpa – basil – garden – mint

A: How do you (1)..... your weekend, Habiba?

B: I help my (2)..... in his garden.

A: What does your grandpa grow in the (3).....?

B: He grows (4)..... and mint.

A: You can use (5)..... to make mint tea.



Vocabulary and Structures

2 Read and circle the odd one out and replace it with the correct word:

10

1 bread – cheese – fruit – science

(.....)

2 vehicles – architect – paramedic – engineer

(.....)

3 major – pollution – expensive – ideal

(.....)

4 reduce – support – benefit – summer

(.....)

5 petals – thorns – research – leaves

(.....)

3 Choose the correct answer:

10

1 We can turn sunshine into energy using (oil – solar panels – electricity – phones).

2 According to our (passport – souvenir – travel plan – exhibition), we are visiting three sites this week.

3 Farmers use natural (weeds – fertilizers – hibiscus – dust) to help the plants grow.

4 She can (read – swim – climb – study) in the sea.

5 A/An (engineer – paramedic – mechanic – tailor) fixes broken cars.

6 She (doesn't – don't – isn't – aren't) read history books.

7 (Are – Does – Is – Has) they painting the wall right now?

8 You mustn't (am – be – is – are) late for school.

9 We are able (to – too – in – by) finish the text on time.

10 He (can – can't – should – don't) speak loudly in the library.



Reading Comprehension

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

10

Al Galala City is a modern city in Egypt, built on Al Galala Plateau near Ain Sokhna. The government built it to reduce crowding in older cities. The city has luxury hotels, beaches, a water park, and a famous cable car that offers great views from the mountain to the sea. Al Galala is also a center for education and science. Galala University welcomes students from Egypt and abroad to study medicine, engineering, and more.

A Answer the following questions:

- 1 Why did the government build Al Galala City?
- 2 What does the city have?
- 3 How is Al Galala City a center for education and science?

B Choose the correct answer:

- 4 Al Galala City is in (Italy – Egypt – London – Paris).
- 5 Al Galala (Park – Club – School – University) welcomes students from Egypt and abroad.



Writing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

10

- 1 see – She – a – must – doctor – tonight.
.....
- 2 should – properly – People – store – food.
.....
- 3 on the – The – are – crashing – waves – beach.
.....
- 4 our – day – We – start – saluting – the flag – by.
.....
- 5 save – turn – You – must – lights – off – the – to – energy.
.....

6 Write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences using the following guiding elements:

10

“Life in Beni Seuf”

live – prepare – cotton – factories – cement

.....

.....

.....

.....

Language Functions

1 Read and complete the dialogue:

10

live – where – south – Aswan – cool

A: Hi Omar, (1)..... do you live?

B: I (2)..... in Aswan.

A: Where is (3).....?

B: It's in the (4)..... of Egypt, near the Nile.

A: It sounds (5).....! I wish I could visit Aswan one day.



Vocabulary and Structures

2 Read and circle the odd one out and replace it with the correct word:

10

- 1 baskets – fridges – crafts – dangerous (.....)
- 2 water – grow – pull out – mummies (.....)
- 3 mechanic – petals – street cleaner – traffic officer (.....)
- 4 pollution – traffic – classmate – food waste (.....)
- 5 bread – chicken – gold – food (.....)

3 Choose the correct answer:

10

- 1 To (**warp** – cover – decorate – survive) is to make something look beautiful.
- 2 Can I buy this small pyramid as a/an (**guide** – passport – exhibition – souvenir)?
- 3 Let's sit under this tree and rest in the (**sun** – shade – wind – temperature).
- 4 People use a (**recipe** – souvenir – magazine – bicycle) to remember their trips.
- 5 The traffic officers control (**emergencies** – vehicles – water research – buildings).
- 6 When (**do** – does – is – are) the sun rise?
- 7 My sister isn't (**writes** – write – writing – wrote) in her notebook.
- 8 You (**shouldn't** – mustn't – should – don't) be polite and kind.
- 9 Mona (**doesn't** – isn't – aren't – can't) able to open the jar.
- 10 She (**can't** – don't – isn't – can) sing. Her voice is beautiful.



Reading Comprehension

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

10

Ali visited the Grand Egyptian Museum yesterday. He was fascinated by the ancient monuments he saw there. He likes the Lotus Chalice. This chalice is made of alabaster. It looks like a white lotus flower with two handles. It was found in King Tutankhamun's tomb. It was used in special ceremonies like funeral rituals. People believed it helped the king live forever in the afterlife.

A Answer the following questions:

- 1 What is the Lotus Chalice made of?
- 2 What does it look like?
- 3 What did people in Ancient Egypt believe it could do?

B Choose the correct answer:

- 4 Ali visited the Grand Egyptian Museum (today – now – yesterday – tomorrow).
- 5 It was used in (wedding – festival – funeral – birth) rituals.



Writing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

10

- 1 grows – father – My – on – tomatoes – roof – the.
- 2 is – The – quickly – temperature – rising – Aswan – in.
- 3 can – People – leftovers – animals – feed.
- 4 have – We – subjects – math – like – science – and.
- 5 stories – Maha – new – bought – yesterday.

6 Write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences using the following guiding elements:

10

“My trip to Wadi El Rayan”

organized – packed – shining – dunes – waterfalls

.....

.....

.....

.....



Language Functions

1 Read and complete the dialogue:

10

crops – breeze – weave – village – nets

Mr. Nader: How do you help in your (1).....?

Amina: I fish with my dad and enjoy the sea (2).....

Omar: I clean fishing (3)..... and drink tea outside with family.

Salma: We grow, harvest (4)..... and sell them at the Friday market.

Hassan: We (5)..... wool rugs and dye them with natural colors.



Vocabulary and Structures

2 Read and circle the odd one out and replace it with the correct word:

10

- 1 tailor – weeds – delivery person – paramedic (.....)
- 2 fox – Red Sea – ibis – sea turtle (.....)
- 3 went – bought – slept – played (.....)
- 4 wind – cloud – parks – rain (.....)
- 5 string – loom – wool – juice (.....)

3 Choose the correct answer:

10

- 1 (Materials – Mummies – Temples – Museums) are used to make different things like gold and clay.
- 2 He has a (plan – tour – brochure – passport) and can travel to another country now.
- 3 Farmers use olives to make (herbs – oil – weeds – basil).
- 4 We wear hats to (heat – protect – grow – clean) ourselves from the sun.
- 5 A/An (architect – vet – mechanic – paramedic) designs houses and buildings.
- 6 Does your brother (likes – like – liked – liking) chocolate?
- 7 Mom (has – have – had – is having) breakfast now.
- 8 Maha should (helps – helped – helping – help) her mom at home.
- 9 She is able (to read – read – reads – reading) fast.
- 10 You can't (drives – drive – drove – driving) the car. It's broken.



Reading Comprehension

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

10

Man-made resources are things people create using natural materials. For example, plastic is made from oil and used for bottles, toys, and school supplies. Glass is made from sand and used in windows, mirrors, and cups. One interesting resource is bricks, made by mixing clay and water, then dried or baked. They are used to build houses, schools, and walls. Paper is made from trees and processed in factories for writing and reading.

A Answer the following questions:

- 1 What are man-made resources?
- 2 What is glass made from?
- 3 How are bricks made?

B Choose the correct answer:

- 4 Plastic is made from (sand – clay – paper – oil).
- 5 (Paper – Glass – Bricks – Plastic) is made from trees and used for writing on.



Writing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

10

- 1 need – Animals – safe – to – habitats – survive.
.....
- 2 famous – Mostafa – is a – Egyptian – El-Sayed – scientist.
.....
- 3 in the – People – are – drinking – resting – water – and – shade.
.....
- 4 school – My – ends – day – 1:30 – afternoon – in the – at.
.....
- 5 work – Many – people – as – fishermen – or – farmers.
.....

6 Write a paragraph of FIVE (5) sentences using the following guiding elements:

10

“A famous person”

brilliant – born – University – expert – awards

.....

.....

.....

.....

Tapescripts

يحتوي هذا الجزء على إجابات توضح الاستماع الخاصة بالكتاب.

UNIT 1

Test Yourself 1

I visit Khan El-Khalili with my family. We buy souvenirs like lamps and bracelets from the market and see handmade furniture. The smell of the bread is amazing. We also see shops where workers make furniture by hand. In the evening, we visit beautiful ancient sites and take photos. I enjoy learning about Egypt's culture and spending time there.

Test Yourself 2

Salma lives in Qutur, Gharbia. Her family grows fruits and vegetables. They water the plants, harvest the crops, and feed the animals. On Fridays, they go to the market to sell food. Hassan lives in Bashandy village. His family spins wool and makes rugs. He helps his mother dye the wool.

UNIT 2

Practice on Lesson 1

Ahmed is a farmer. He grows herbs like basil, mint, and parsley. On his farm, he also has trees such as guava, fig, and olive trees. His work with plants is important because plants give us food, fresh air, and shade. Ahmed helps care for nature and provides healthy things for people to eat and enjoy.

Test Yourself 1

The Nile is the longest river in the world. It flows through Egypt from south to north. Many animals, like Nile perch, tilapia, crocodiles, and birds, live near it. The river brings life to the desert. In the past, it flooded and brought good soil. People use it for water, food, boats, and jobs. Ancient Egyptians built temples near it.

Test Yourself 2

I wanted to take a picture of the skeletons with my camera when I realized that it wasn't with me. I looked everywhere with no luck. Thankfully, Mr. Ahmed found it tucked under a wooden bench outside the exhibit just before we left that area. That trip was full of nature, history, and fun with friends.

UNIT 3

Practice on Lesson 1

Omar, Youssef, and Salma are doing research about jobs that help our community. Youssef wants to be a mechanic. Omar wants to be a water resources engineer; they make sure we get clean water. Salma wants to be a paramedic. Traffic officers help people control cars. Street cleaners help keep the city beautiful. Delivery persons bring packages and food to homes. Tailors make clothes.

Test Yourself 1

Once, in a dry desert, a beautiful rose lived beside a rough cactus. The rose was proud and made fun of the cactus for his thorns. One summer, there was no water, and the rose began to wilt. She saw a bird drink water from the cactus. Surprised, she asked for help, and the kind cactus shared his water.

Test Yourself 2

Our community needs helpful jobs. A paramedic helps in emergencies, saving lives. An architect designs safe buildings, while a water engineer makes sure we have clean water. A tailor makes clothes, and a delivery worker brings things to our houses. Our street cleaner keeps our city beautiful and clean. A mechanic fixes our vehicles. These jobs can help many people.

UNIT 4

Practice on Lesson 1

I am Noha. I am working on the history project. I'm reading about materials the ancient Egyptians used. It's so cool. They used stone, clay, papyrus, linen, wood, and even gold. It's unbelievable how long that material could survive. Some materials are still used today. Stone is used in modern buildings—just like they used it for pyramids and temples. I love how they carved huge statues from granite. We still use stone today for sculptures and buildings.

Test Yourself 1

Energy is something we all need every day—to light our homes, cook, watch TV, and charge our phones. In Egypt, we use electricity, gas, and solar power. But energy is not endless, so we must use it wisely. Some types of energy come from nature, such as solar energy from the sun and wind energy from the air. They are clean and help protect the environment. They are clean and don't pollute the environment. Egypt has lots of sunshine, so using more solar panels saves money and helps the planet.

Test Yourself 2

Egypt has many natural resources like oil, gas, gold, and iron. We find them under the ground in deserts. People use oil and gas for energy. Gold is used to make jewelry. Iron is strong and helps us build things. These resources help Egypt grow and become a strong country.

UNIT 5

Practice on Lesson 1

Egypt is one of the oldest countries with pyramids, temples, and pharaohs. The Grand Egyptian Museum is in Giza. It took 20 years to finish. It shows mummies, jewelry, tools, and King Khufu's Solar Boat. The museum uses modern technology like smart screens and amazing shows. History comes alive in this museum.

Test Yourself 1

This chalice is made of alabaster. It looks like a white lotus flower with two handles. It was found in King Tutankhamun's tomb. Now, it is in the Grand Egyptian Museum. It was used in special ceremonies like funeral rituals. It is a symbol of eternal life and beauty. People believed it helped the king live forever in the afterlife.

Test Yourself 2

Al Galala is a new city near the Red Sea. It helps people move away from overcrowded cities. There are comfortable hotels and clean beaches for visitors. From a famous cable car, people can see a great view of the mountains. Galala is also a center for education and science. It is part of Egypt's plan to build sustainable cities for the future.

Final Tests Tapescripts

Test 1

Last weekend, Salma visited Luxor with her family. They saw many ancient sites and took lots of photos. Salma loved the temples and statues. She bought souvenirs for her friends and ate delicious sandwiches for lunch. In the evening, they visit ancient sites near the area. It was a wonderful and unforgettable trip.

Test 2

Ali loves how plants help people. His grandpa grows hibiscus and basil in their garden. The plants give them tea ingredients and fresh air. Every morning, Ali helps pull out weeds and water the plants. Trees in their garden provide cool shade. Ali learns that plants like olives make oil too.

Test 3

Omar wants to be a paramedic. He helps people in emergencies. His sister Fatima studies to be an architect. She designs buildings. Their neighbor Ali is a mechanic. He fixes vehicles. Omar's father works as a tailor. He makes clothes. Uncle Sami is a traffic officer. He controls the streets. The community needs all these jobs.

Test 4

Ancient Egyptians used many materials. They built statues with granite and bricks. They made jewelry from gold and colored stones. They wrote on papyrus. They wrapped mummies in linen. They decorated temples. These materials helped their culture survive. We still see them today.

Test 5

Tutankhamen's mask is in the Grand Egyptian Museum. Tourists visit Egypt to see ancient treasures. The museum took years to finish. Inside, visitors see mummies and artifacts. They ask for help at the information desk. People need passports to travel. Brochures explain museum exhibits.

Test 6

Some people live in villages. In Amina's village, they are fishermen. Omar's village uses fishing nets. Salma's village grows crops. Hassan's family spins wool. Villages have different jobs. People work hard every day. They fish, farm, and make things. Life is simple but busy.

Test 7

A beautiful rose grew near a cactus. She laughed at his thorns. When hot weather came, the rose dried up. She saw a bird peck the cactus and drink water. The kind cactus helped the thirsty rose. The rose felt sorry for being unkind. The rose learned that kindness matters most. Now they were friends.

Test 8

Ahmed's family moved to Al Galala City last year. They love the clean air and sea views. The father works at a hotel. His sister studies at Galala University. Ahmed rides the cable car every weekend. The city has beaches and a water park. Before, this area was empty. Now it's full of life. The government is building more homes and parks.

Test 9

Layla checks her weather app while eating breakfast. In Alexandria, her cousin Samir texts about rainy beaches. In Cairo, her brother plays football in sunny weather. Layla worries about her grandma in Aswan, where the weather is very hot. Layla waters their balcony plants before school. It's a bit hot today.

Test 10

School begins at 7:30. We start the day outside by standing in line, saluting the flag, and singing the national anthem. Then we go to our classrooms and begin our lessons. Our first subject is usually Arabic. I really enjoy it because we learn and sometimes work in groups or pairs.

Test 11

We can save electricity at home by turning off lights. Close fridge doors quickly. Use solar power from Egypt's sunshine. Pick the right pot sizes for cooking. Walk or bike for short trips. These small acts help our planet.

Test 12

Maged is playing tennis at the club now. The boys are not watching TV—they're practicing football. Look! Nada is wearing her new dress today. My parents are visiting Aunt Leila this evening. The cat is sleeping on the couch right now. We aren't going to the park because it's raining.

Test 13

Daily life in Beni Suef starts early. People start their day by cleaning houses and cooking breakfast. Farmers grow crops like cotton and beans. Other people work in local factories. These factories produce cement and clothing items. Lunchtime brings families together. They share meals of rice, bread, and fresh vegetables.

Test 14

Hil I'm Omar, and I'm doing research project about man-made resources for my English class. I started by reading a book and searching the internet with my dad. I wrote facts in my notebook and printed pictures to help explain. Plastic is made from oil and used for bottles, toys, and school supplies. Glass is made from sand and used in windows.

Test 15

I learn new things about the cactus. It grows in the desert, and it doesn't need too much water to grow. It has sharp thorns. Thorns are sharp points that grow on the stem or a branch of a plant to protect it. It feels unpleasant to touch these thorns. A cactus doesn't have any petals.

Writing Answers

يحتوي هذا الجزء على إجابات أسئلة الكتابة (برجاء) الخاصة بجميع الوحدات.

UNIT 1

Practice on Lesson 2

A famous national park

Sinai is a beautiful place in Egypt. It has a famous national park. The park has amazing coral reefs and colorful fish. Many people visit to see the marine life. They swim and dive in the clear water. It is a great place to enjoy nature and learn.

Practice on Lesson 3

Life in a village

Life in a village is simple and quiet. Many people work as farmers or fishermen. Others make bread, raise animals, or sell things in the market. Children help their families by carrying water, feeding animals, or cleaning. Life in the village is special because people know each other, help each other, and enjoy the fresh air and beautiful nature.

Practice on Lessons 4 and 5

To : sam@gamil.com
From : bassem@gmail.com
Subject : My School Day
Hi Sam, I hope you are well. I go to school at 7 a.m. We start with saluting the flag and singing the national anthem. I study Arabic, English, and math. At break, I eat and play with my friends. I go home at 1:30 p.m. and do my homework. Write soon! Bassem

Test Yourself 1

My daily routine

Every day, I wake up early and get ready for school. I study many subjects, like Arabic, English, and math. At break time, I eat a sandwich and drink juice. After school, I go home, do my homework, and help my family. At night, I eat dinner, read a book, and sleep early.

Test Yourself 2

To : hazem@gmail.com
From : shady@gmail.com
Subject : My Life in the Village
Hi Hazem, How are you? I want to tell you about my daily life. I wake up early and help my father on the farm. I study at school and play with my friends after class. Children help their families by carrying water, feeding animals, or cleaning. In the evening, I eat dinner with my family and sleep early. Write soon! Your friend, Shady

Al-Azhar Corner

Ras Mohamed National Park

Coral reefs are beautiful and colorful. Many people snorkel to see fish and sea animals. Sometimes, they can see dolphins swimming. We must protect the sea and coral reefs. They are part of our nature and culture.

UNIT 2

Practice on Lesson 2

The weather in Alexandria

To	: amira@gamil.com
From	: eman@gmail.com
Subject	: The weather in Alexandria
Hi Amira, How are you? I want to tell you about the weather in Alexandria. It is windy today. The wind is strong and the waves are high. People are staying inside because it is cold. The sea looks big and noisy. Some shops are closed. I like watching the waves from the window. The wind and the waves make the city feel alive and exciting. Your friend, Eman	

Practice on Lessons 4 and 5

Visiting a new place

Last Friday, I went to the zoo. I went with my family. We went on a school trip. I saw lions, monkeys, and birds. We took many pictures and ate lunch in the park. The weather was sunny and nice. I had a great time. I want to go there again soon.

Test Yourself 1

A trip to Wadi El Rayan

Last Thursday, I packed my bag with snacks, water, and a camera. I rode the bus with my classmates and teacher. We saw lakes, waterfalls, and sand dunes. The weather was sunny and nice. We ate lunch and took photos. I had a great time at Wadi El Rayan. I want to go again!

Test Yourself 2

The weather in Aswan

The weather in Aswan is much hotter than in other cities. The sun is strong, and the sky is clear. People drink water and rest in the shade. Some people wear hats and sunglasses to protect themselves. Farmers water the plants early in the morning. I like Aswan, but the heat is very strong!

Al-Azhar Corner

The weather in Cairo

The weather in Cairo is warm and sunny today. The sun is shining, and the sky is clear. Children are playing in the parks. Some students are doing their homework outside. Families are sitting in gardens and enjoying the nice weather. I can see birds flying in the sky. It's a beautiful day in Cairo!

UNIT 3

Practice on Lesson 1

Jobs can help our community

Many jobs help our community. A water resources engineer gives us clean water at home and school. A street cleaner keeps the roads clean and safe. A traffic officer helps people cross the street and stops accidents. These jobs are very important. People in the community work together to make life better for everyone.

Practice on Lesson 2

Solving my community problems

There is a lot of traffic near my school. Cars move slowly, and it is hard to cross the street. To solve this problem, we can ride bikes or walk to school. This will help make the streets safer and cleaner. Riding bikes is also healthy and fun. We must all help our community. People should throw garbage in the bins.

Practice on Lessons 4 and 5

My favorite famous Egyptian person

My favorite famous Egyptian person is Mohamed Salah. He was born in Egypt in 1992. He studied and played football when he was young. Now, he lives in England and plays for a big football club. He is fast, kind, and works hard. Many people love him. He makes Egypt proud around the world.

Test Yourself 1

Jobs that help our community

Many jobs help our community every day. A tailor makes clothes for people. A mechanic fixes cars and bikes so we can travel safely. These jobs are very important. They help us live better and solve daily problems. People in the community work hard, and we should thank them for their important work.

Test Yourself 2

A Community problem

Wasting food is a big problem in our community. People throw away leftovers, and this makes more garbage. Good food is lost, and some people don't have enough to eat. We should keep food in the fridge or give it to animals. If we stop wasting food, we can help others and keep our streets clean.

Al-Azhar Corner

A biography of an important person

Dr. Magdi Yacoub is an important Egyptian heart doctor. He was born in 1935. He studied medicine at Cairo University. His achievements in heart surgery are known around the world. He helped many sick people live better lives. He also started a heart center in Egypt to help the community. He is a true Egyptian hero.

UNIT 4

Practice on Lesson 2

Energy

Energy is not endless, so we must use it carefully. Solar power is a clean way to get energy from the sun. It does not pollute the air. Using too much energy can cause climate change. This can harm animals and plants. We should turn off lights and use clean energy to help our planet.

Practice Lessons 4 and 5

The High Dam

The High Dam is an important project in Egypt. It helps protect the land from flooding and gives water to farmers to grow crops. The dam also produces electricity for homes and schools. Because of the High Dam, many people have a better life. It helps Egypt stay safe, strong, and full of green farms.

Test Yourself 1

Energy resources

We use different energy resources every day. Solar energy comes from the sun and is clean. It helps us save money and protect nature. Some energy, like oil and gas, can pollute the air and water. We should use more solar power to keep the Earth safe. Clean energy is better for people and animals.

Test Yourself 2

A research about man-made resources

Man-made resources are things people make from natural materials. For example, glass is made from sand, and paper is made from trees. These natural things are changed by people to make useful products. We use glass for windows and bottles. We use paper for books and notebooks. Man-made resources help us in our daily life.

Al-Azhar Corner

The High Dam

The High Dam is a huge wall that crosses the Nile River in Aswan, Egypt. It stops the Nile from flooding and keeps people safe. It creates a big lake called Lake Nasser. The dam gives electricity to homes and schools. It also helps farmers by giving water to grow crops. The High Dam is very important for our country.

UNIT 5

Practice on Lesson 2

Al Galala City

Al Galala City is a modern city in Egypt. It was built on Al Galala Plateau near Ain Sokhna. The city has luxury hotels, beaches, a water park, and a famous cable car. In the past, the area was empty, but now it is full of life. People work in hotels, teach, or run businesses.

Practice on Lesson 3

The importance of unity

We should stop fighting. Unity is important because it makes us strong. When we work together, we can solve problems and achieve great things. We don't need to fight each other; instead, we should support one another. Together, we are better, and with unity, we can build a peaceful and successful future.

Practice on Lessons 4 and 5

How clean energy helps the environment

Egypt is a sunny country, making it ideal for solar energy. Solar energy is such a clean source of energy that can help reduce pollution and keep the environment clean. We can also use solar panels that generate clean electricity. Using renewable sources like solar power helps protect the Earth.

Test Yourself 1

Al Galala City

Al Galala City is a modern city in Egypt on the Red Sea. The city has luxury hotels, beaches, a water park, and a famous cable car that offers great views from the mountain to the sea. It was part of a national plan devised in 2015 to reduce numbers of people in overcrowded older cities.

Test Yourself 2

Benban Solar Park

One major project in Egypt is Benban Solar Park near Aswan. It's one of the world's largest solar stations. Built between 2018 and 2019, it has over 6 million panels and provides electricity to homes, schools, hospitals, and factories. Benban uses clean, sustainable energy, reducing pollution and keeping the air safe.

Al-Azhar Corner

The Grand Egyptian Museum

Egypt has pyramids, ancient temples, strong pharaohs, and amazing history. One of the newest and most exciting places to visit is the Grand Egyptian Museum. Visitors can see statues, jewelry, and mummies. The museum uses modern technology. It has a smart screen and amazing shows to help people learn in a fun way.

كراسة تسميع الكلمات

Dictation Copybook



Unit 1

DICTATION



Lesson 1

يشترى الهدايا التذكارية
يصنع الأكاث
يأكل كشرى
ثقافة
قريب / مجاور

يشرب عصير القصب
يزور المواقع الأثرية
يلتقط صورًا
أنشطة
شوارع

Lesson 2

الشعاب المرجانية
صاف / واضح
يقطس باستخدام
أنبوب التنفس
أشجار المانجروف
منطقة محمية

الحياة البحرية
البيئة
مناظر طبيعية
دلافين
البدو

Lesson 3

تسجيلات صوتية
مستويات
شباك الصيد
الأنوال (آلات حياكة السجاد)
مشروع

سجادة
صيادو السمك
يحصد المحاصيل
قوارب خشبية
صوف

Lessons 4 & 5

نشيد (وطني)
التربية الدينية
الدراسات الاجتماعية
موضوعات
صعب / خادع

يُخرج الكتب
يرتب/يجهّز حقيبة المدرسة
يحيى العلم
يلعب في ساحة المدرسة / الفناء
عادي / طبيعي

Unit 2

DICTATION



Lesson 1

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

سماد طبيعي

يروى / يسقى

أعشاب ضارة

يزرع

يسحب / يشد

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

نعناع

لا يُصدق / مذهل

أشعة الشمس

ظل

الشفرة (البلكونة)

Lesson 2

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

الطقس

مبلل

خيبر

مظلم

ممطر

في الخارج

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

أمواج

مبكر

دافئ

نظارات شمسية

في الداخل

أخبار

Lesson 3

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

سمك البلطي

طيور الرفراف

جنوب

خاص / مميز

بط

شمال

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

سمك البياض النيلي

تماسيح

طيور مالك الحزين

تربة

قمح

معايد

Lessons 4 & 5

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

كثبان رمليّة

شلالات

أشجار النخيل

مرشد / دليل

أحفورة

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

نادر

هيكل عظمي

تاريخ

معرض

مخبأ

Unit 3

DICTATION



Lesson 1

.....	مسعف	.....	ضابط مرور
.....	ميكانيكي	.....	مهندس موارد المياه
.....	عامل نظافة شوارع	.....	عامل توصيل
.....	مهندس معماري	.....	هام
.....	خياط / ترفيز	.....	شجاع
.....	مركبة	.....	حالة طارئة

Lesson 2

.....	قمامة	.....	ملصقات
.....	مزعج	.....	حركة المرور
.....	بيئة	.....	لافتة
.....	زميل دراسة	.....	فظيع / رهيب
.....	مدير المدرسة	.....	خطير

Lesson 3

.....	جاف	.....	مزعج / كريبه
.....	فصول السنة	.....	منتعش
.....	مُحَرَّج	.....	فخور
.....	مخلوق	.....	حاد
.....	ضعيف	.....	أشواك

Lessons 4 & 5

.....	مصري	.....	بطل
.....	إنجاز	.....	بنك طعام
.....	إهدار الطعام	.....	عبقري / ذكي جدًا
.....	عالم	.....	بقايا الطعام
.....	اكتشاف	.....	علمي
.....	جامعة	.....	إضافي

Unit 4

DICTATION



Lesson 1

جرائيت	نبات البردي
طين/صلصال	مدھش
معيد	منحوتات / تماثيل
ينجو / يبق على قيد الحياة	مومياءات
أحجار ملونة	رائع (جذاب)
طوب	ثقافة
كتان	ذهب

Lesson 2

الطاقة الشمسية	الأجهزة
كوكب	الأكواح الشمسية
تغير المناخ	أفعال / تصرفات
أبطال الطاقة	النقط
أبدى (لا نهاية لها)	وقود
نور الشمس	غير آمن

Lesson 3

صخرة	أرض
معادن	عميق
موارد طبيعية	سائل
مجوهرات	حرارة/ تسخين
الفولاذ / الصلب	كهرباء

Lessons 4 & 5

السد العالي	كهرباء
محاصيل	حبوب
ضخم	دقيق/صحيح
فيضان	حقائق
جفاف	الري
أدوات مدرسية	مصنع

Unit 5

DICTATION



Lesson 1

أمتعة / حقائب السفر

معرض

مكتب المعلومات

يحتجز

نادر/استثنائي

جواز السفر

المتحف المصري الكبير

كتيب/نشرة

هدية تذكارية

يركب الطائرة

الفرانجة

عجائب

يحتجز/يعبر

لوحات عرض تفاعلية

Lesson 2

هضبة

قومي

رؤية

جبل

رفاهية/فاخر

التعليم

ازدحام

هادئ/مسالم

مستدام

صناعات/أعمال تجارية

خطوط النقل

خارج البلاد

Lesson 3

حزمة

الاتحاد /الوحدة

قوى

وحيد/بمفرده

يتشاجر

عصى منفردة

حكمة

قوة

قلق/منزعج

يجادل

Lessons 4 & 5

محطات شمسية

رئيسي

وقود باهظ الثمن

تدريب

رمز

احتفال/طقس

صعيد مصر

الحياة الأبدية

طاقة مستدامة

تلوث

مثالي

مقايض

جنازة

تنمية/ تطوير

المجتمعات المحلية

مشروع ذو قيمة



Story

.....	تنقط	.....	قطرة مياه
.....	تفيض (تزداد عن الحد)	.....	قيم / ثمين
.....	بركة مياه	.....	تفرقع أصابعها (علامة على إيجاد فكرة)
.....	تسريب	.....	مهمة
.....	رواق (ممر داخل المبنى)	.....	فضولي
.....	خرطوم	.....	مسرب للمياه
.....	صنبور	.....	مبهج
.....	ماسورة	.....	مزاح / سخريّة
.....	تحدّ صغير	.....	ينشر (فكرة / خبرًا)